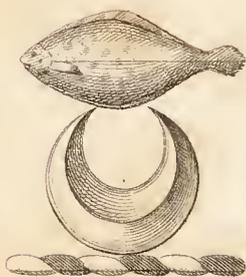




607/B

4/6



*Sam. Reynolds. Solby*





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2017 with funding from  
Wellcome Library

<https://archive.org/details/b29339364>

THE WORKS  
OF  
GILDAS AND NENNIUS,

TRANSLATED FROM THE LATIN.

THIS SERIES OF THE MONKISH HISTORIANS,  
PUBLISHED UNDER THE SUPERINTENDENCE OF  
THE REV. DR. GILES, C. C. COLL. OXFORD,  
MEMBER OF THE ENGLISH HISTORICAL SOCIETY,  
WILL BE COMPLETED IN ABOUT TWELVE VOLUMES.

---

BEDE'S ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY,  
AND  
THE WORKS OF GILDAS AND NENNIUS,  
ARE NOW PUBLISHED.

---

RICHARD OF DEVIZES' CHRONICLE OF  
RICHARD I.  
AND  
RICHARD OF CIRENCESTER'S DESCRIPTION  
OF BRITAIN,  
WILL FORM THE NEXT VOLUME, TO BE FOLLOWED  
IMMEDIATELY BY

WILLIAM OF MALMESBURY'S HISTORY,  
GEOFFREY OF MONMOUTH,  
AND  
WILLIAM OF NEWBURY;

ALL OF WHICH ARE IN A STATE OF FORWARDNESS.  
THESE WILL BE SUCCEEDED BY THE REMAINING CHRONICLES  
NECESSARY TO COMPLETE THE SERIES.

---





Heas post troia-  
num bellum ex-  
adum urbis cū  
ascamo filio dis-  
fugiens: italiam  
navigio adiuit.  
Ibi cum a latino re-  
ge honorifice sus-  
ceptus eet. inuidit turnus vitulorū rex. & cū  
illo congressus est. Vnicantib; ergo illis: pre-  
ualuit eneas. pemptoq; turno: regnum ita-  
lie & launiam filiam latinū adeptus est.  
Veniq; suprema die ipsius supueniente: as-  
canus regia potestate sullinatus condi-  
dit albam sup tiberim. genuitq; filium  
cui nomen erat siluius. Hic furti ve-  
ueneri indulgens: nupsit cuidam nepta  
launie. eamq; fecit pregnantem. Sumiq;  
id ascamo patris comptum eet: precepit ma-  
gis suis explorare. quem sexim puella conce-  
pisset. Certitudine ergo rei compta. dixerunt  
magi ipam grauidam ee puero. qui patrem  
& matrem interficeret. Plurib; quoq; terris in  
exilium pagratil: ad summum tandem cul-  
men honoris pueniret.

# THE WORKS

OF

## GILDAS AND NENNIUS.

---

TRANSLATED FROM THE LATIN,

AND WITH THE FORMER TRANSLATIONS CAREFULLY COMPARED  
AND CORRECTED.

BY J. A. GILES, LL.D.

LATE FELLOW OF C. C. COLL. OXFORD.

---

LONDON :

JAMES BOHN, 12, KING WILLIAM STREET, STRAND.

MDCCCXLI.

87301.



LONDON:  
WILLIAM STEVENS, PRINTER, BELL YARD,  
TEMPLE BAR.

THE  
WORKS OF GILDAS,  
SURNAMED THE WISE.

---

TRANSLATED FROM THE LATIN,  
BY J. A. GILES, LL.D.,  
LATE FELLOW OF C. C. COLL. OXFORD.

---

LONDON:  
JAMES BOHN, 12, KING WILLIAM STREET, STRAND.

MDCCCLII.

LONDON :  
WILLIAM STEVENS, PRINTER, BELL YARD,  
TEMPLE BAR.

TO THE RIGHT REVEREND  
HENRY,  
LORD BISHOP OF EXETER,  
THIS TRANSLATION OF  
GILDAS,  
IS RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED,  
BY HIS LORDSHIP'S  
OBEDIENT AND HUMBLE SERVANT,  
J. A. GILES.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	Page
PREFACE . . . . .	i
WORKS OF GILDAS	
I. THE PREFACE . . . . .	1
II. THE HISTORY . . . . .	7
III. THE EPISTLE . . . . .	24
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES . . . . .	103



## PREFACE.



OF Gildas, the supposed author of this work, little or nothing is known. Mr. Stevenson, in the Preface to his edition of the original Latin, lately published by the English Historical Society, says: "We are unable to speak with certainty as to his parentage, his country, or even his name, the period when he lived, or the works of which he was the author." Such a statement is surely sufficient to excuse us at present from saying more on the subject, than that he is supposed to have lived and have written what remains under his name during some part of the sixth century. It may not be irrelevant to inform the reader that he may shortly expect some valuable elucidations from the pen of Mr. Wright, who has kindly communicated to the translator his intention to reduce the History of Gildas to so shadowy a state of existence that no more than

a *nominis umbra* will remain. Of the present translation, the first or historic half is entirely new; in the rest, consisting almost entirely of texts from Scripture, the translator has thought it quite sufficient to follow the old translation of Habington, correcting whatever errors he could detect, and in some degree relieving the quaint and obsolete character of the language. It has been remarked by Polydore Virgil, that Gildas quotes no other book but the Bible; and it may be added, that his quotations are in other words than those of the Vulgate or common authorized translation. The title of the old translation is as follows: "The epistle of Gildas the most ancient British Author: who flourished in the yeere of our Lord, 546. And who by his great erudition, Sanctitie, and wisdome, acquired the name of *Sapiens*. Faithfully translated out of the originall Latine." London, 12mo. 1638.

THE  
WORKS OF GILDAS,

SURNAMED

“SAPIENS,” OR THE WISE.

---

I. THE PREFACE.

§ 1. WHATEVER in this my epistle I may write in my humble but well-meaning manner, rather by way of lamentation than for display, let no one suppose that it springs from contempt of others, or that I foolishly esteem myself as better than they;—for, alas! the subject of my complaint is the general destruction of every thing that is good, and the general growth of evil throughout the land;—but that I would condole with my country in her distress and rejoice to see her revive therefrom: for it is my present purpose to relate the deeds of an indolent and slothful race, rather than the exploits of those who have been valiant in the field. I have kept silence, I confess, with much mental anguish, compunction of feeling and contrition of heart, whilst I revolved all these things within myself; and, as God the searcher of the reins is witness, for the space of even

All that follows, enclosed within brackets, up to page 5, is omitted in some copies.

ten years or more, [my inexperience, as at present also, and my unworthiness preventing me from taking upon myself the character of a censor. But I read how the illustrious lawgiver, for one word's doubting, was not allowed to enter the desired land; that the sons of the high-priest, for placing strange fire upon God's altar, were cut off by a speedy death; that God's people, for breaking the law of God, save two only, were slain by wild beasts, by fire and sword in the deserts of Arabia, though God had so loved them that he had made a way for them through the Red Sea, had fed them with bread from heaven, and water from the rock, and by the lifting up of a hand merely had made their armies invincible; and then, when they had crossed the Jordan and entered the unknown land, and the walls of the city had fallen down flat at the sound only of a trumpet, the taking of a cloak and a little gold from the accursed things caused the deaths of many: and again the breach of their treaty with the Gibeonites, though that treaty had been obtained by fraud, brought destruction upon many; and I took warning from the sins of the people which called down upon them the reprehensions of the prophets and also of Jeremiah, with his fourfold Lamentations written in alphabetic order. I saw moreover in my own time, as that prophet also had complained, that the city had sat down lone and widowed, which before was full of people; that the queen of nations and the princess of provinces (*i. e.* the Church), had been made tributary; that the gold was obscured, and the most excellent colour (which is the brightness of God's word) changed; that the sons of Sion (*i. e.* of holy Mother Church), once famous and clothed in the finest gold,

grovelled in dung; and what added intolerably to the weight of grief of that illustrious man, and to mine, though but an abject, whilst he had thus mourned them in their happy and prosperous condition, “ Her Nazarites were fairer than snow, more ruddy than old ivory, more beautiful than the sapphire.” These and many other passages in the ancient Scriptures I regarded as a kind of mirror of human life, and I turned also to the New, wherein I read more clearly what perhaps to me before was dark, for the darkness fled, and truth shed her steady light—I read therein that the Lord had said, “ I came not but to the lost sheep of the house of Israel;” and on the other hand, “ But the children of this kingdom shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth:” and again, “ It is not good to take the children’s meat and to give it to dogs:” also, “ Woe to you, scribes and pharisees, hypocrites!” I heard how “ many shall come from the east and the west, and shall sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob in the kingdom of heaven:” and on the contrary, “ I will then say to them, ‘ Depart from me, ye workers of iniquity!’ ” I read, “ Blessed are the barren, and the teats which have not given suck;” and on the contrary, “ Those, who were ready, entered with him to the wedding; afterwards came the other virgins also, saying ‘ Lord, Lord, open to us:’ to whom it was answered, ‘ I do not know you.’ ” I heard, forsooth, “ Whoever shall believe and be baptized, shall be saved, but whoever shall not believe shall be damned.” I read in the words of the apostle that the branch of the wild olive was grafted upon the good olive, but should nevertheless be cut off from the communion of the root of its

Omitted in some copies.

Omitted in  
some copies.

fatness, if it did not hold itself in fear, but entertained lofty thoughts. I knew the mercy of the Lord, but I also feared his judgment: I praised his grace, but I feared the rendering to every man according to his works: perceiving the sheep of the same fold to be different, I deservedly commended Peter for his entire confession of Christ, but called Judas most wretched, for his love of covetousness: I thought Stephen most glorious on account of the palm of martyrdom, but Nicholas wretched for his mark of unclean heresy: I read assuredly, “They had all things common:” but likewise also, as it is written, “Why have ye conspired to tempt the spirit of God?” I saw, on the other hand, how much security had grown upon the men of our time, as if there were nothing to cause them fear. These things, therefore, and many more which for brevity’s sake we have determined to omit, I revolved again and again in my amazed mind with compunction in my heart, and I thought to myself, “If God’s peculiar people, chosen from all the people of the world, the royal seed, and holy nation, to whom he had said, ‘My first-begotten Israel,’ its priests, prophets, and kings, throughout so many ages, his servant and apostle, and the members of his primitive church, were not spared when they deviated from the right path, what will he do to the darkness of this our age, in which, besides all the huge and heinous sins, which it has in common with all the wicked of the world committed, is found an innate, indelible, and irremediable load of folly and inconstancy?” “What, wretched man (I say to myself) is it given to you, as if you were an illustrious and learned teacher, to oppose the force of so violent a torrent, and keep the charge

committed to you against such a series of inveterate crimes which has spread far and wide, without interruption, for so many years? Hold thy peace: to do otherwise, is to tell the foot to see, and the hand to speak. Britain has rulers, and she has watchmen: why dost thou incline thyself thus uselessly to prate?" She has such, I say, not too many, perhaps, but surely not too few: but, because they are bent down and pressed beneath so heavy a burden, they have not time allowed them to take breath. My senses, therefore, as if feeling a portion of my debt and obligation, preoccupied themselves with such objections, and with others yet more strong. They struggled, as I said, no short time, in a fearful strait, whilst I read, "There is a time for speaking, and a time for keeping silence." At length, the creditor's side prevailed and bore off the victory: If (said he) thou art not bold enough to be marked with the comely mark of golden liberty among the prophetic creatures, who enjoy the rank as reasoning beings next to the angels, refuse not the inspiration of the understanding ass, to that day dumb, which would not carry forward the tiara'd magician who was going to curse God's people, but in the narrow pass of the vineyard crushed his loosened foot, and thereby felt the lash; and though he was, with his ungrateful and furious hand, against right justice, beating her innocent sides, she pointed out to him the heavenly messenger holding the naked sword, and standing in his way, though he had not seen him.]

Omitted in  
some copies.

Wherefore in zeal for the house of God and for his holy law, constrained either by the reasonings of my own thoughts, or by the pious entreaties of my brethren, I

now discharge the debt so long exacted of me ; humble, indeed, in style, but faithful, as I think, and friendly to all Christ's youthful soldiers, but severe and insupportable to foolish apostates ; the former of whom, if I am not deceived, will receive the same with tears flowing from God's love ; but the others with sorrow, such as is extorted from the indignation and pusillanimity of a convicted conscience.

§ 2. I will, therefore, if God be willing, endeavour to say a few words about the situation of Britain, her disobedience and subjection, her rebellion, second subjection and dreadful slavery—of her religion, persecution, holy martyrs, heresies of different kinds—of her tyrants, her two hostile and ravaging nations—of her first devastation, her defence, her second devastation and second taking vengeance — of her third devastation, of her famine, and the letters to Agitius—of her victory and her crimes—of the sudden rumour of enemies—of her famous pestilence—of her counsels—of her last enemy, far more cruel than the first—of the subversion of her cities, and of the remnant that escaped ; and finally, of the peace which, by the will of God, was granted her in these our times.

Or Ætius,  
see page 16.

## II. THE HISTORY.

§ 3. THE island of Britain, situated on almost the ut-  
most border of the earth, towards the south and west, and poised in the Divine balance, as is said, which supports the whole world, stretches out from the south-west towards the North Pole, and is eight hundred miles long and two hundred broad, except where the headlands of sundry promontories stretch farther into the sea. It is surrounded by the ocean, which forms winding bays, and is strongly defended by this ample and, if I may so call it, impassable barrier, save on the south side, where the narrow sea affords a passage to Belgic Gaul. It is enriched by the mouths of two noble rivers, the Thames and the Severn, as it were two arms, by which foreign luxuries were of old imported, and by other streams of less importance. It is famous for eight-and-twenty cities, and is embellished by certain castles, with walls, towers, well-barred gates, and houses with threatening battlements built on high, and provided with all requisite instruments of defence. Its plains are spacious, its hills are pleasantly situated, adapted for superior tillage, and its mountains are admirably calculated for the alternate pasturage of cattle, where flowers of various colours, trodden by the feet of man, give it the appearance of a lovely picture. It is decked, like a man's chosen bride, with divers jewels, with lucid fountains, and abundant brooks wandering over the snow-white sands; with transparent rivers, flowing in gentle murmurs, and offering a pledge of sweet slumber to those who recline upon their banks, whilst it is irrigated by abundant lakes, which pour forth cool torrents of refreshing water.

Description  
of Britain.

its disobe-  
dience.

§ 4. This island, stiff-necked and stubborn-minded, from the time of its being first inhabited, ungratefully rebels, sometimes against God, sometimes against her own citizens, and frequently, also, against foreign kings and their subjects. For what can there either be, or be committed, more disgraceful, or more unrighteous in human affairs, than to refuse to show fear to God or affection to one's own countrymen, and (without detriment to one's faith) to refuse due honour to those of higher dignity, to cast off all regard to reason, human and divine, and in contempt of heaven and earth to be guided by one's own sensual inventions? I shall, therefore, omit those ancient errors common to all the nations of the earth, in which, before Christ came in the flesh, all mankind were bound; nor shall I enumerate those diabolical idols of my country, which almost surpassed in number those of Egypt, and of which we still see some mouldering away within or without the deserted temples, with stiff and deformed features as was customary. Nor will I call out upon the mountains, fountains, or hills; or upon the rivers, which now are subservient to the use of men, but once were an abomination and destruction to them, and to which the blind people paid divine honour. I shall also pass over the by-gone times of our cruel tyrants, whose notoriety was spread over to far distant countries; so that Porphyry, that dog who in the East was always so fierce against the Church, in his mad and vain style added this also, that "Britain is a land fertile in tyrants." I will only endeavour to relate the evils which Britain suffered in the times of the Roman emperors, and also those which she caused to distant states; but as far as lies in my power, I shall not follow the writings and records of my own country, which (if there ever were any of them) have been consumed in the fires of the enemy, or have accompanied my exiled countrymen into distant lands, but be guided by the relations of foreign writers, which,

being broken and interrupted in many places, are therefore by no means clear.

§ 5. For when the rulers of Rome had obtained the empire of the world, subdued all the neighbouring nations and islands towards the east, and strengthened their renown by the first peace which they made with the Parthians, who border on India, there was a general cessation from war throughout the whole world; the fierce flame which they kindled could not be extinguished or checked by the Western Ocean, but passing beyond the sea, imposed submission upon our island without resistance, and entirely reduced to obedience its unwarlike but faithless people, not so much by fire and sword and warlike engines, like other nations, but threats alone, and menaces of judgment frowning on their countenance, whilst terror penetrated to their hearts. Subdued by  
the Romans.

§ 6. When afterwards they returned to Rome, for want of pay, as is said, and had no suspicion of an approaching rebellion, that deceitful lioness (Boadicea), put to death the rulers who had been left among them, to unfold more fully, and to confirm the enterprises of the Romans. When the report of these things reached the Senate, and they with a speedy army made haste to take vengeance on the crafty foxes, as they called them, there was no bold navy on the sea to fight bravely for the country; by land there was no marshalled army, no right wing of battle, nor other preparation for resistance; but their backs were their shields against their vanquishers, and they presented their necks to their swords, whilst chill terror ran through every limb, and they stretched out their hands to be bound, like women: so that it has become a proverb far and wide, that the Britons are neither brave in war, nor faithful in time of peace. Revolts.

§ 7. The Romans, therefore, having slain many of the rebels, and reserved others for slaves, that the land might not be entirely reduced to desolation, left the Is reduced.

island, destitute as it was of wine and oil, and returned to Italy, leaving behind them taskmasters, to scourge the shoulders of the natives, to reduce their necks to the yoke, and their soil to the vassalage of a Roman province; to chastise the crafty race, not with warlike weapons, but with rods, and, if necessary, to gird upon their sides the naked sword, so that it was no longer thought to be Britain, but a Roman island: and all their money, whether of copper, gold, or silver, was stamped with Cæsar's image.

Christianity. § 8. Meanwhile these islands, stiff with cold and frost, and in a distant region of the world, remote from the visible sun, received the beams of light, that is, the holy precepts of Christ,—who is the true Sun, and who shows to the whole world his splendour, not only from the temporal firmament, but from the height of heaven, which surpasses every thing temporal,—at the latter part, as we know, of the reign of Tiberius Cæsar, by whom his religion was propagated without impediment, and death threatened to those who interfered with its professors.

Diocletian's persecution. § 9. These rays of light were received with lukewarm minds by the inhabitants, but they nevertheless took root among some of them in a greater or a less degree, until the nine years' persecution of the tyrant Diocletian, when the churches throughout the whole world were overthrown, all the copies of the Holy Scriptures which could be found, burnt in the streets, and the chosen pastors of God's flock butchered, together with their innocent sheep, in order that not a vestige, if possible, might remain in some provinces of Christ's religion. What disgraceful flights then took place—what slaughter and death inflicted by way of punishment in divers shapes—what dreadful apostacies from religion; and on the contrary, what glorious crowns of martyrdom then were won—what raving fury was displayed by the persecutors, and patience on the part of the suffering saints, Ecclesiastical History informs us; for the

whole church were crowding in a body, to leave behind them the dark things of this world, and to make the best of their way to the happy mansions of heaven, as if to their proper homes.

§ 10. God, therefore, who wishes all men to be saved, and who calls sinners no less than those who think themselves righteous, magnified his mercy towards us, and, as we know, during the above-named persecution, that Britain might not totally be enveloped in the dark shades of night, he, of his own free gift, kindled up among us bright luminaries of holy martyrs, whose places of burial and of martyrdom, had they not for our manifold crimes been interfered with and destroyed by the barbarians, would have still kindled in the minds of the beholders no small fire of divine charity. Such were St. Alban of Verulam, Aaron and Julius, citizens of Carlisle, and the rest, of both sexes, who in different places stood their ground in the Christian contest.

The Martyrs  
Alban, Aaron  
and Julius.

§ 11. The first of these martyrs, St. Alban, for charity's sake saved another confessor who was pursued by his persecutors, and was on the point of being seized, by hiding him in his house, and then by changing clothes with him, imitating in this the example of Christ, who laid down his life for his sheep, and exposing himself in the other's clothes to be pursued in his stead. So pleasing to God was this conduct, that between his confession and martyrdom, he was honoured with the performance of wonderful miracles in presence of the impious blasphemers who were carrying the Roman standards, and like the Israelites of old, who trod dry-foot an unfrequented path whilst the Ark of the Covenant stood some time on the sands in the midst of Jordan; so also the martyr, with a thousand others, opened a path across the noble river Thames, whose waters stood abrupt like precipices on either side; and seeing this, the first of his executors was stricken with awe, and from a wolf became a lamb; so that he thirsted for martyrdom, and boldly

Sufferings of  
the Chris-  
tians.

underwent that for which he thirsted. The other holy martyrs were tormented with divers sufferings, and their limbs were racked in such unheard of ways, that they, without delay, erected the trophies of their glorious martyrdom even in the gates of the city of Jerusalem. For those who survived, hid themselves in woods and deserts, and secret caves, waiting until God, who is the righteous judge of all, should reward their persecutors with judgment, and themselves with protection of their lives.

Prosperity of  
the Church  
until the  
Arian heresy.

§ 12. In less than ten years, therefore, of the above-named persecution, and when these bloody decrees began to fail in consequence of the death of their authors, all Christ's young disciples, after so long and wintry a night, begin to behold the genial light of heaven. They rebuild the churches, which had been levelled to the ground; they found, erect, and finish churches to the holy martyrs, and everywhere show their ensigns as token of their victory; festivals are celebrated and sacraments received with clean hearts and lips, and all the Church's sons rejoice as it were in the fostering bosom of a mother. For this holy union remained between Christ their head and the members of his church, until the Arian treason, fatal as a serpent, and vomiting its poison from beyond the sea, caused deadly dissension between brothers inhabiting the same house, and thus, as if a road were made across the sea, like wild beasts of all descriptions, and darting the poison of every heresy from their jaws, they inflicted dreadful wounds upon their country, which is ever desirous to hear something new, and remains constant long to nothing.

The tyrants.

§ 13. At length also, new races of tyrants sprang up, in terrific numbers, and the island, still bearing its Roman name, but casting off her institutes and laws, sent forth among the Gauls that bitter scion of her own planting, Maximus, with a great number of followers, and the ensigns of royalty, which he bore without de-

Maximus.

cency and without lawful right, but in a tyrannical manner, and amid the disturbances of the seditious soldiery. He, by cunning arts rather than by valour, attaching to his rule, by perjury and falsehood, all the neighbouring towns and provinces, against the Roman state, extended one of his wings to Spain, the other to Italy, fixed the seat of his unholy government at Treves, and so furiously pushed his rebellion against his lawful emperors that he drove one of them out of Rome, and caused the other to terminate his most holy life. Trusting to these successful attempts, he not long after lost his accursed head before the walls of Aquileia, whereas he had before cut off the crowned heads of almost all the world.

Valentinian was driven out of Rome: Gratian was slain.

§ 14. After this, Britain is left deprived of all her soldiery and armed bands, of her cruel governors, and of the flower of her youth, who went with Maximus, but never again returned; and utterly ignorant as she was of the art of war, groaned in amazement for many years under the cruelty of two foreign nations—the Scots from the north-west, and the Picts from the north.

Picts and Scots.

§ 15. The Britons, impatient at the assaults of the Scots and Picts, their hostilities and dreadful oppressions, send ambassadors to Rome with letters, entreating in piteous terms the assistance of an armed band to protect them, and offering loyal and ready submission to the authority of Rome, if they only would expel their invading foes. A legion is immediately sent, forgetting their past rebellion, and provided sufficiently with arms. When they had crossed over the sea and landed, they came at once to close conflict with their cruel enemies, and slew great numbers of them. All of them were driven beyond the borders, and the humiliated natives rescued from the bloody slavery which awaited them. By the advice of their protectors, they now built a wall across the island from one sea to the other, which being manned with a proper force, might be a terror to the foes whom it was intended to repel, and

Embassy to Rome.

a protection to their friends whom it covered. But this wall, being made of turf instead of stone, was of no use to that foolish people, who had no head to guide them.

Romans  
leave Britain.

§ 16. The Roman legion had no sooner returned home in joy and triumph, than their former foes, like hungry and ravening wolves, rushing with greedy jaws upon the fold which is left without a shepherd, are wafted both by the strength of oarsmen and the blowing wind, break through the boundaries, and spread slaughter on every side, and like mowers cutting down the ripe corn, they cut up, tread under foot, and overrun the whole country.

Second em-  
bassy.

§ 17. And now again they send suppliant ambassadors, with their garments rent and their heads covered with ashes, imploring assistance from the Romans, and, like timorous chickens, crowding under the protecting wings of their parents, that their wretched country might not altogether be destroyed, and that the Roman name, which now was but an empty sound to fill the ear, might not become a reproach even to distant nations. Upon this, the Romans, moved with compassion, as far as human nature can be, at the relation of such horrors, send forward, like eagles in their flight, their unexpected bands of cavalry by land and mariners by sea, and planting their terrible swords upon the shoulders of their enemies, they mow them down like leaves which fall at the destined period; and as a mountain-torrent swelled with numerous streams, and bursting its banks with roaring noise, with foaming crest and yeasty wave rising to the stars, by whose eddy currents our eyes are as it were dazzled, does with one of its billows overwhelm every obstacle in its way, so did our illustrious defenders vigorously drive our enemies' band beyond the sea, if any could so escape them; for it was beyond those same seas that they transported, year after year, the plunder which they had gained, no one daring to resist them.

§ 18. The Romans, therefore, left the country, giving notice that they could no longer be harassed by such laborious expeditions, nor suffer the Roman standards, with so large and brave an army, to be worn out by sea and land by fighting against these unwarlike, plundering vagabonds; but that the islanders, inuring themselves to warlike weapons, and bravely fighting, should valiantly protect their country, their property, wives and children, and, what is dearer than these, their liberty and lives; that they should not suffer their hands to be tied behind their backs by a nation which, unless they were enervated by idleness and sloth, was not more powerful than themselves, but that they should arm those hands with buckler, sword, and spear, ready for the field of battle; and, because they thought this also of advantage to the people they were about to leave, they, with the help of the miserable natives, built a wall different from the former, by public and private contributions, and of the same structure as walls generally, extending in a straight line from sea to sea, between some cities, which, from fear of their enemies, had there by chance been built. They then give energetic counsel to the timorous natives, and leave them patterns by which to manufacture arms. Moreover, on the south coast where their vessels lay, as there was some apprehension lest the barbarians might land, they erected towers at stated intervals, commanding a prospect of the sea; and then left the island never to return.

§ 19. No sooner were they gone, than the Picts and Scots, like worms which in the heat of mid-day come forth from their holes, hastily land again from their canoes, in which they had been carried beyond the Cichican valley, differing one from another in manners, but inspired with the same avidity for blood, and all more eager to shroud their villainous faces in bushy hair than to cover with decent clothing those parts of their body which required it. Moreover, having heard of the

Romans  
leave Britain  
finally.

Picts and  
Scots again  
invade.

The meaning  
of this ex-  
pression is  
not known.  
O'Connor  
thinks it is  
the Irish Sea.

departure of our friends, and their resolution never to return, they seized with greater boldness than before on all the country towards the extreme north as far as the wall. To oppose them there was placed on the heights a garrison equally slow to fight and ill adapted to run away, a useless and panic-struck company, which slumbered away days and nights on their unprofitable watch. Meanwhile the hooked weapons of their enemies were not idle, and our wretched countrymen were dragged from the wall and dashed against the ground. Such premature death, however, painful as it was, saved them from seeing the miserable sufferings of their brothers and children. But why should I say more? They left their cities, abandoned the protection of the wall, and dispersed themselves in flight more desperately than before. The enemy, on the other hand, pursued them with more unrelenting cruelty than before, and butchered our countrymen like sheep, so that their habitations were like those of savage beasts; for they turned their arms upon each other, and for the sake of a little sustenance, imbrued their hands in the blood of their fellow-countrymen. Thus foreign calamities were augmented by domestic feuds; so that the whole country was entirely destitute of provisions, save such as could be procured in the chase.

Third embassy to Rome.

Or *Agitius*, according to another reading.

§ 20. Again, therefore, the wretched remnant, sending to Ætius, a powerful Roman citizen, address him as follows:—"To Ætius, now Consul for the third time: the groans of the Britons." And again a little further, thus:—"The Barbarians drive us to the sea; the sea throws us back on the barbarians: thus two modes of death await us, we are either slain or drowned." The Romans, however, could not assist them, and in the meantime the discomfited people, wandering in the woods, began to feel the effects of a severe famine, which compelled many of them without delay to yield themselves up to their cruel persecutors, to obtain sub-

sistence : others of them, however, lying hid in mountains, caves, and woods, continually sallied out from thence to renew the war. And then it was, for the first time, that they overthrew their enemies, who had for so many years been living in their country; for their trust was not in man, but in God; according to the maxim of Philo, “ We must have Divine assistance, when that of man fails.” The boldness of the enemy was for a while checked, but not the wickedness of our countrymen : the enemy left our people, but the people did not leave their sins.

§ 21. For it has always been a custom with our nation, as it is at present, to be impotent in repelling foreign foes, but bold and invincible in raising civil war, and bearing the burdens of their offences: they are impotent, I say, in following the standard of peace and truth, but bold in wickedness and falsehood. The audacious invaders therefore return to their winter quarters, determined before long again to return and plunder. And then, too, the Picts for the first time seated themselves at the extremity of the island, where they afterwards continued, occasionally plundering and wasting the country. During these truces, the wounds of the distressed people are healed, but another sore, still more venomous, broke out. No sooner were the ravages of the enemy checked, than the island was deluged with a most extraordinary plenty of all things, greater than was before known, and with it grew up every kind of luxury and licentiousness. It grew with so firm a root, that one might truly say of it, “ Such fornication is heard of among you, as never was known the like among the Gentiles.” But besides this vice, there arose also every other, to which human nature is liable, and in particular that hatred of truth, together with her supporters, which still at present destroys every thing good in the island; the love of falsehood, together with its inventors, the reception of crime in the place of virtue,

Wickedness  
of the Bri-  
tons.

the respect shown to wickedness rather than goodness, the love of darkness instead of the Sun, the admission of Satan as an angel of light. Kings were anointed, not according to God's ordinance, but such as showed themselves more cruel than the rest; and soon after, they were put to death by those who had elected them, without any inquiry into their merits, but because others still more cruel were chosen to succeed them. If any one of these was of a milder nature than the rest, or in any way more regardful of the truth, he was looked upon as the ruiner of the country, every body cast a dart at him, and they valued things alike whether pleasing or displeasing to God, unless it so happened that what displeased him was pleasing to themselves. So that the words of the prophet, addressed to the people of old, might well be applied to our own countrymen: "Children without a law, have ye left God and provoked to anger the holy one of Israel? Why will ye still inquire, adding iniquity? Every head is languid and every heart is sad: from the sole of the foot to the crown, there is no health in him." And thus they did all things contrary to their salvation, as if no remedy could be applied to the world by the true Physician of all men. And not only the laity did so, but our Lord's own flock and its shepherds, who ought to have been an example to the people, slumbered away their time in drunkenness, as if they had been dipped in wine; whilst the swellings of pride, the jar of strife, the griping talons of envy, and the confused estimate of right and wrong, got such entire possession of them, that there seemed to be poured out (and the same still continueth) contempt upon princes, and to be made by their vanities to wander astray and not in the way.

Is. i. 4, 5.

In most of these quotations there is great verbal variation from the authorized version: the author probably quoted from memory, or from a Latin version.

§ 22. Meanwhile, God being willing to purify his family who were infected by so deep a stain of woe, and at the hearing only of their calamities to amend them; a vague rumour suddenly as if on wings reaches the ears

of all, that their inveterate foes were rapidly approaching to destroy the whole country, and to take possession of it, as of old, from one end to the other. But yet they derived no advantage from this intelligence; for, like frantic beasts, taking the bit of reason between their teeth, they abandoned the safe and narrow road, and rushed forward upon the broad downward path of vice, which leads to death. Whilst, therefore, as Solomon says, the stubborn servant is not cured by words, the fool is scourged and feels it not: a pestilential disease mortally affected the foolish people, which, without the sword, cut off so large a number of persons, that the living were not able to bury them. But even this was no warning to them, that in them also might be fulfilled the words of Isaiah the prophet, "And God hath called his people to lamentation, to baldness, and to the girdle of sackcloth; behold they begin to kill calves, and to slay rams, to eat, to drink, and to say, *We will eat and drink, for to-morrow we shall die.*" For the time was approaching, when all their iniquities, as formerly those of the Amorrhæans, should be fulfilled. For a council was called to settle what was best and most expedient to be done, in order to repel such frequent and fatal irruptions and plunderings of the above-named nations.

§ 23. Then all the councillors, together with that proud tyrant Gurthrigern, the British king, were so blinded, that, as a protection to their country, they sealed its doom by inviting in among them (like wolves into the sheep-fold) the fierce and impious Saxons, a race hateful both to God and men, to repel the invasions of the northern nations. Nothing was ever so pernicious to our country, nothing was ever so unlucky! What palpable darkness must have enveloped their minds! darkness desperate and cruel! Those very people, whom, when absent, they dreaded more than death itself, were invited to reside, as one may say, under the

self-same roof. Foolish are the princes, as it is said, of Thafneos, giving counsel to unwise Pharaoh. A multitude of whelps came forth from the lair of this barbaric lioness, in three cyuls, as they call them, that is, in three ships of war, with their sails wafted by the wind and with omens and prophecies favourable, for it was foretold by a certain soothsayer among them, that they should occupy the country to which they were sailing three hundred years, and half of that time, a hundred and fifty years, should plunder and despoil the same. They first landed on the eastern side of the island, by the invitation of the unlucky king, and there fixed their sharp talons, apparently to fight in favour of the island, but alas! more truly against it. Their mother-land, finding her first brood thus successful, sends forth a larger company of her wolfish offspring, which sailing over, join themselves to their bastard-born comrades. From that time, the germ of iniquity and the root of contention planted their poison amongst us, as we deserved, and shot forth into leaves and branches. The barbarians being thus introduced as soldiers into the island, to encounter, as they falsely said, any dangers in defence of their hospitable entertainers, obtain an allowance of provisions, which, for some time being plentifully bestowed, stopped their doggish mouths. Yet they complain that their monthly supplies are not furnished in sufficient abundance, and they industriously aggravate each occasion of quarrel, saying that unless more liberality is shown them, they will break the treaty and plunder the whole island. In a short time, they follow up their threats with deeds.

Ravages of  
the Saxons.

§ 24. For the fire of vengeance, justly kindled by former crimes, spread from sea to sea, fed by the hands of our foes in the east, and did not cease, until, destroying the neighbouring towns and lands, it reached the other side of the island, and dipped its red and savage tongue in the western ocean. In these assaults there-

fore, not unlike that of the Assyrian upon Judæa, was fulfilled in our case what the prophet describes in words of Lamentation: "They have burned with fire the sanctuary; they have polluted on earth the tabernacle of thy name." And again, "O God, the Gentiles have come into thine inheritance; thy holy temple have they defiled," &c. So that all the columns were levelled with the ground by the frequent strokes of the battering-ram, all the husbandmen routed, together with their bishops, priests, and people, whilst the sword gleamed, and the flames crackled around them on every side. Lamentable to behold, in the midst of the streets lay the tops of lofty towers, tumbled to the ground, stones of high walls, holy altars, fragments of human bodies, covered with livid clots of coagulated blood, looking as if they had been squeezed together in a press; and with no chance of being buried, save in the ruins of the houses, or in the ravening bellies of wild beasts and birds; with reverence be it spoken for their blessed souls, if, indeed, there were many found who were carried, at that time, into the high heaven by the holy angels. So entirely had the vintage, once so fine, degenerated and become bitter, that, in the words of the prophet, there was hardly a grape or ear of corn to be seen where the husbandman had turned his back.

These are the words of the old translation: the original is obscure, and perhaps corrupt.

§ 25. Some, therefore, of the miserable remnant, being taken in the mountains, were murdered in great numbers; others, constrained by famine, came and yielded themselves to be slaves for ever to their foes, running the risk of being instantly slain, which truly was the greatest favour that could be offered them: some others passed beyond the seas with loud lamentations instead of the voice of exhortation. "Thou hast given us as sheep to be slaughtered, and among the Gentiles hast thou dispersed us." Others, committing the safeguard of their lives, which were in continual jeopardy, to the mountains, precipices, thickly wooded forests, and

Sufferings of the Britons.

to the rocks of the seas (albeit with trembling hearts), remained still in their country. But in the meanwhile, an opportunity happening, when these most cruel robbers were returned home, the poor remnants of our nation (to whom flocked from divers places round about our most miserable countrymen as fast as bees to their hives, for fear of an ensuing storm), being strengthened by God, calling upon him with all their hearts, as the poet says,—

“ With their unnumbered vows they burden heaven,”

that they might not be brought to utter destruction, took arms under the conduct of Ambrosius Aurelianus, a modest man, who of all the Roman nation was then alone in the confusion of this troubled period by chance left alive. His parents, who for their merit were adorned with the purple, had been slain in these same broils, and now his progeny in these our days, although shamefully degenerated from the worthiness of their ancestors, provoke to battle their cruel conquerors, and by the goodness of our Lord obtain the victory.

Various fortune of the war till the time of Gildas.

§ 26. After this, sometimes our countrymen, sometimes the enemy, won the field, to the end that our Lord might in this land try after his accustomed manner these his Israelites, whether they loved him or not, until the year of the siege of Bath-hill, when took place also the last almost, though not the least slaughter of our cruel foes, which was (as I am sure) forty-four years and one month after the landing of the Saxons, and also the time of my own nativity. And yet neither to this day are the cities of our country inhabited as before, but being forsaken and overthrown, still lie desolate; our foreign wars having ceased, but our civil troubles still remaining. For as well the remembrance of such a terrible desolation of the island, as also of the unexpected recovery of the same, remained in the minds of those who were eyewitnesses of the wonderful events of both, and in regard

thereof, kings, public magistrates, and private persons, with priests and clergymen, did all and every one of them live orderly according to their several vocations. But when these had departed out of this world, and a new race succeeded, who were ignorant of this troublesome time, and had only experience of the present prosperity, all the laws of truth and justice were so shaken and subverted, that not so much as a vestige or remembrance of these virtues remained among the above-named orders of men, except among a very few, who, compared with the great multitude which were daily rushing headlong down to hell, are accounted so small a number, that our reverend mother, the church, scarcely beholds them, her only true children, reposing in her bosom; whose worthy lives being a pattern to all men, and beloved of God, inasmuch as by their holy prayers, as by certain pillars and most profitable supporters, our infirmity is sustained up, that it may not utterly be broken down. I would have no one suppose I intended to reprove, if forced by the increasing multitude of offences, I have freely, aye, with anguish, not so much declared as bewailed the wickedness of those who are become servants not only to their bellies, but also to the devil rather than to Christ, who is our blessed God, world without end.

For why shall their countrymen conceal, what foreign nations round about now, not only know, but also continually are casting in their teeth.

## III. THE EPISTLE.

Depravity of  
the Britons.

§ 27. BRITAIN has kings, but they are tyrants; she has judges, but unrighteous ones; generally engaged in plunder and rapine, but always preying on the innocent; whenever they exert themselves to avenge or protect, it is sure to be in favour of robbers and criminals; they have an abundance of wives, yet are they addicted to fornication and adultery; they are ever ready to take oaths, and as often perjure themselves; they make a vow and almost immediately act falsely; they make war, but their wars are against their countrymen, and are unjust ones; they rigorously prosecute thieves throughout their country, but those who sit at table with them are robbers, and they not only cherish but reward them; they give alms plentifully, but in contrast to this is a whole pile of crimes which they have committed; they sit on the seat of justice, but rarely seek for the rule of right judgment; they despise the innocent and the humble, but seize every occasion of exalting to the utmost the bloody-minded, the proud, murderers, the combined and adulterers, enemies of God, who ought to be utterly destroyed and their names forgotten.

They have many prisoners in their gaols, loaded with chains, but this is done in treachery rather than in just punishment for crimes, and when they have stood before the altar, swearing by the name of God, they go away and think no more of the holy altar than if it were a mere heap of dirty stones.

Constantine.

§ 28. Of this horrid abomination, Constantine, the tyrannical whelp of the unclean lioness of Damnonia, is not ignorant.

Of this Con-  
stantine little  
is known.

This same year, after taking a dreadful oath (whereby he bound himself first before God, by a solemn protesta-

tion, and then called all the Saints, and Mother of God to witness, that he would not contrive any deceit against his countrymen), he nevertheless, in the habit of a holy abbot amid the sacred altars, did with sword and javelin, as if with teeth, wound and tear, even in the bosoms of their temporal Mother, and of the Church their spiritual Mother, two royal youths, with their two attendants, whose arms, although not cased in armour, were yet boldly used, and, stretched out towards God and his altar, will hang up at the gates of thy city, O Christ, the venerable ensigns of their faith and patience; and when he had done it, the cloaks, red with coagulated blood, did touch the place of the heavenly sacrifice. And not one worthy act could he boast of previous to this cruel deed; for many years before he had stained himself with the abomination of many adulteries, having put away his wife contrary to the command of Christ, the teacher of the world, who hath said: "What God hath joined together, let not man separate," and again: "Husbands, love your wives." For he had planted in the ground of his heart (an unfruitful soil for any good seed) a bitter scion of incredulity and folly, taken from the vine of Sodom, which being watered with his vulgar and domestic impieties, like poisonous showers, and afterwards audaciously springing up to the offence of God, brought forth into the world the sin of horrible murder and sacrilege; and not yet discharged from the entangling nets of his former offences, he added new wickedness to the former.

§ 29. Go to now, I reprove thee as present, whom I know as yet to be in this life extant. Why standest thou astonished, O thou butcher of thine own soul? Why dost thou wilfully kindle against thyself the eternal fires of hell? Why dost thou, in place of enemies, desperately stab thyself with thine own sword, with thine own javelin? Cannot those same poisonous cups of offences yet satisfy thy stomach? Look back (I

Gildas re-  
proves Con-  
stantine.

beseech thee) and come to Christ (for thou labourest, and art pressed down to the earth with this huge burthen), and he himself, as he said, will give thee rest. Come to him who wisheth not the death of a sinner, but that he should be rather converted and live. Unloose (according to the prophet) the bands of thy neck, O thou son of Sion. Return (I pray thee) although from the far remote regions of sins, unto the most holy Father, who for his son that will despise the filthy food of swine, and fear a death of cruel famine, and so come back to him again, hath with great joy been accustomed to kill his fatted calf, and bring forth for the wanderer, the first robe and royal ring, and then taking as it were a taste of the heavenly hope, thou shalt perceive, how sweet our Lord is. For if thou dost contemn these, be thou assured, thou shalt almost instantly be tossed and tormented in the inevitable and dark floods of endless fire.

Gildas re-  
proves Aure-  
lius Conanus.

§ 30. What dost thou also, thou lion's whelp (as the prophet saith), Aurelius Conanus? Art not thou as the former (if not far more foul) to thy utter destruction, swallowed up in the filthiness of horrible murders, fornications, and adulteries, as by an overwhelming flood of the sea? Hast not thou by hating, as a deadly serpent, the peace of thy country, and thirsting unjustly after civil wars and frequent spoil, shut the gates of heavenly peace and repose against thine own soul? Being now left alone as a withering tree in the midst of a field, remember (I beseech thee) the vain and idle fancies of thy parents and brethren, together with the untimely death that befel them in the prime of their youth; and shalt thou, for thy religious deserts, be reserved out of all thy family to live a hundred years, or to attain to the age of a Methusalem? No, surely, but unless (as the Psalmist saith) thou shalt be speedily converted unto our Lord, that King will shortly brandish his sword against thee, who hath said by his prophet, "I will kill, and I will

cause to live, I will strike, and I will heal, and there is no one who can deliver out of my hand." Be thou therefore shaken out of thy filthy dust, and with all thy heart converted to Him who hath created thee, that "when his wrath shall shortly burn out, thou mayst be blessed by fixing thy hopes on him." But if otherwise, eternal pains will be heaped up for thee, where thou shalt be ever tormented and never consumed in the cruel jaws of hell.

§ 31. Thou also, who like to the spotted leopard, art Gildas rebukes Vortipore. diverse in manners and in mischief, whose head now is growing grey, who art seated on a throne full of deceits, and from the bottom even to the top art stained with murder and adulteries, thou naughty son of a good King, like Manasses sprung from Ezechiah, Vortipore, thou foolish tyrant of the Demetians, why art thou so stiff? What! do not such violent gulfs of sin (which thou dost swallow up like pleasant wine, nay, rather which swallow thee up), as yet satisfy thee, especially since the end of thy life is daily now approaching? Why dost thou heavily clog thy miserable soul with the sin of lust, which is fouler than any other, by putting away thy wife, and after her honourable death, by the base practices of thy shameless daughter? Waste not (I beseech thee) the residue of thy life in offending God, because as yet an acceptable time and day of salvation shines on the faces of the penitent, wherein thou mayest take care that thy flight may not be in the winter, or on the sabbath day. "Turn away (according to the Psalmist) from evil, and do good, seek peace and ensue it," because the eyes of our Lord will be cast upon thee, when thou doest righteousness, and his ears will be then open unto thy prayers, and he will not destroy thy memory out of the land of the living; thou shalt cry, and he will hear thee, and out of thy tribulations deliver thee; for Christ doth never despise a heart that is contrite and humbled with fear of him. Otherwise, the worm of thy torture

shall not die, and the fire of thy burning shall never be extinguished.

The reprov-  
ing of Cune-  
glasse.

§ 32. And thou too, Cuneglasse, why art thou fallen into the filth of thy former naughtiness, yea, since the very first spring of thy tender youth, thou bear, thou rider and ruler of many, and guider of the chariot which is the receptacle of the bear, thou contemner of God, and vilifier of his order, thou tawny butcher, as in the Latin tongue thy name signifies? Why dost thou raise so great a war as well against men as also against God himself, against men, yea, thy own countrymen, with thy deadly weapons, and against God with thine infinite offences? Why, besides thine other innumerable backslidings, having thrown out of doors thy wife, dost thou, in the lust, or rather stupidity of thy mind, against the apostle's express prohibition, denouncing that no adulterers can be partakers of the kingdom of heaven, esteem her detestable sister, who had vowed unto God the everlasting continency, as the very flower (in the language of the poet) of the celestial nymphs? Why dost thou provoke with thy frequent injuries the lamentations and sighs of saints, by thy means corporally afflicted, which will in time to come, like a fierce lioness, break thy bones in pieces? Desist, I beseech thee (as the prophet saith) from wrath, and leave off thy deadly fury, which thou breathest out against heaven and earth, against God and his flock, and which in time will be thy own torment; rather with altered mind obtain the prayers of those who possess a power of binding over this world, when in this world they bind the guilty, and of loosing when they loose the penitent. Be not (as the apostle saith) proudly wise, nor hope thou in the uncertainty of riches, but in God who giveth thee many things abundantly, and by the amendment of thy manners purchase unto thyself a good foundation for hereafter, and seek to enter into that real and true state of existence which will be not transitory but everlasting. Otherwise, thou shalt know

and see, yea, in this very world, how bad and bitter a thing it is for thee to leave the Lord thy God, and not have his fear before thine eyes, and in the next, how thou shalt be burned in the foul encompassing flames of endless fire, nor yet by any manner of means shalt ever die. For the souls of the sinful are as eternal in perpetual fire, as the souls of the just in perpetual joy and gladness.

§ 33. And likewise, O thou dragon of the island, who hast deprived many tyrants, as well of their kingdoms as of their lives, and though the last-mentioned in my writing, the first in mischief, exceeding many in power, and also in malice, more liberal than others in giving, more licentious in sinning, strong in arms, but stronger in working thine own soul's destruction, Maglocune, why art thou (as if soaked in the wine of the Sodomitical grape) foolishly rolling in that black pool of thine offences? Why dost thou wilfully heap like a mountain, upon thy kingly shoulders, such a load of sins? Why dost thou show thyself unto the King of kings (who hath made thee as well in kingdom as in stature of body higher than almost all the other chiefs of Britain) not better likewise in virtues than the rest; but on the contrary for thy sins much worse? Listen then awhile and hear patiently the following enumeration of thy deeds, wherein I will not touch any domestic and light offences (if yet any of them are light) but only those open ones which are spread far and wide in the knowledge of all men. Didst not thou, in the very beginning of thy youth, terribly oppress with sword, spear, and fire, the king thine uncle, together with his courageous bands of soldiers, whose countenances in battle were not unlike those of young lions? Not regarding the words of the prophet, who says, "The blood-thirsty and deceitful men shall not live out half their days;" and even if the sequel of thy sins were not such as ensued, yet what retribution couldst thou expect for this

The reproof  
of Maglo-  
cune.

offence only at the hands of the just Judge, who hath said by his prophet: "Woe be to thee who spoilest, and shalt not thou thyself be spoiled? and thou who killest, shalt not thyself be killed? and when thou shalt make an end of thy spoiling, then shalt thou thyself fall."

§ 34. But when the imagination of thy violent rule had succeeded according to thy wishes, and thou wast urged by a desire to return into the right way, night and day the consciousness of thy crimes afflicted thee, whilst thou didst ruminate on the Lord's ritual and the ordinances of the monks, and then publish to the world and vow thyself before God a monk with no intention to be unfaithful, as thou didst say, having first burst through those toils in which such great beasts as thyself were used to become entangled, whether it were love of rule, of gold, or silver, or, what is stronger still, the fancies of thy own heart. And didst thou not, as a dove which cleaves the yielding air with its pinions, and by its rapid turns escapes the furious hawk, safely return to the cells where the saints repose, as a most certain place of refuge? Oh how great a joy should it have been to our Mother Church, if the enemy of all mankind had not lamentably pulled thee, as it were, out of her bosom! Oh what an abundant flame of heavenly hope would have been kindled in the hearts of desperate sinners, hadst thou remained in thy blessed estate! Oh what great rewards in the kingdom of Christ would have been laid up for thy soul against the day of judgment, if that crafty wolf had not caught thee, who of a wolf wast now become a lamb (not much against thine own will) out of the fold of our Lord, and made thee of a lamb, a wolf like unto himself, again? Oh how great a joy would the preservation of thy salvation have been to God the Father of all saints, had not the devil, the father of all castaways, as an eagle of monstrous wings and claws, carried thee captive away against all right and reason, to the unhappy band of his children? And

to be short, thy conversion to righteousness gave as great joy to heaven and earth, as now thy detestable return, like a dog to his vomit, breedeth grief and lamentation: which being done, “the members which should have been busily employed, as the armour of justice for the Lord, are now become the armour of iniquity for sin and the devil;” for now thou dost not listen to the praises of God sweetly sounded forth by the pleasant voices of Christ’s soldiers, nor the instruments of ecclesiastical melody, but thy own praises (which are nothing) rung out after the fashion of the giddy rout of Bacchus by the mouths of thy villanous followers, accompanied with lies and malice, to the utter destruction of the neighbours; so that the vessel prepared for the service of God, is now turned to a vessel of dirt, and what was once reputed worthy of heavenly honour, is now cast as it deserves into the bottomless pit of hell.

§ 35. Yet neither is thy sensual mind (which is overcome by the excess of thy follies) at all checked in its course with committing so many sins, but hot and prone (like a young colt that coveteth every pleasant pasture) runneth headlong forward, with irrecoverable fury, through the intended fields of crime, continually increasing the number of its transgressions. For the former marriage of thy first wife (although after thy violated vow of religion, she was not lawfully thine, but only by right of the time she was with thee), was now despised by thee, and another woman, the wife of a man then living, and he no stranger, but thy own brother’s son, enjoyed thy affections. Upon which occasion that stiff neck of thine (already laden with sins) is now burdened with two monstrous murders, the one of thy aforesaid nephew, the other, of her who once was thy wedded wife: and thou art now from low to lower, and from bad to worse, bowed, bent, and sunk down into the lowest depth of sacrilege. Afterwards, also didst thou publicly marry the widow, by whose deceit and suggestion such

a heavy weight of offences was undergone, and take her, lawfully, as the flattering tongues of thy parasites with false words pronounced it, but as we say, most wickedly, to be thine own in wedlock. And therefore what holy man is there, who moved with the narration of such an history, would not presently break out into weeping and lamentations? What priest (whose heart lyeth open unto God) would not instantly, upon hearing this, exclaim with anguish in the language of the prophet: “Who shall give water to my head, and to my eyes a fountain of tears, and I will day and night bewail those of my people, who are slaughtered.” For full little (alas!) hast thou with thine ears listened to that reprehension of the prophet speaking in this wise: “Woe be unto you (O wicked men) who have left the law of the most holy God, and if ye shall be born, your portion shall be to malediction, and if ye die, to malediction shall be your portion, all things that are from the earth, to the earth shall be converted again, so shall the wicked from malediction pass to perdition:” if they return not unto our Lord, listening to this admonition: “Son, thou hast offended; add no further offence thereunto, but rather pray for the forgiveness of the former.” And again, “Be not slow to be converted unto our Lord, neither put off the same from day to day, for his wrath doth come suddenly.” Because, as the Scripture saith, “When the king heareth the unjust word, all under his dominion become wicked.” And, the just king (according to the prophet) raiseth up his region. But warnings truly are not wanting to thee, since thou hast had for thy instructor the most eloquent master of almost all Britain. Take heed, therefore, lest that which Solomon noteth, befall thee, which is, “Even as he who stirreth up a sleeping man out of his heavy sleep, so is that person who declareth wisdom unto a fool, for in the end of his speech will he say, What hast thou first spoken? Wash thine heart (as it is

written) from malice, oh, Jerusalem, that thou mayst be saved." Despise not (I beseech thee) the unspeakable mercy of God, calling by his prophet the wicked in this way from their offences: "I will on a sudden speak to the nation, and to the kingdom, that I may root out, and disperse, and destroy, and overthrow." As for the sinner he doth in this wise exhort him vehemently to repent. "And if the same people shall repent from their offence, I will also repent of the evil which I have said that I would do unto them." And again, "Who will give them such an heart, that they may hear me, and keep my commandments, and that it may be well with them all the days of their lives." And also in the Canticle of Deuteronomy, "A people without counsel and prudence, I wish they would be wise, and understand, and foresee the last of all, how one pursueth a thousand and two put to flight ten thousand." And again, our Lord in the Gospel, "Come unto me all ye who do labour and are burthened, and I will make you rest. Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me, because I am meek and humble of heart, and ye shall find repose for your souls." For if thou turn a deaf ear to these admonitions, contemn the prophets, and despise Christ, and make no account of us, humble though we be, so long as with sincere piety and purity of mind, we bear in mind that saying of the prophet, that we may not be found, "Dumb dogs, not able to bark;" (however I for my part may not be of that singular fortitude, in the spirit and virtue of our Lord as to declare, "To the house of Jacob their sins, and the house of Israel their offences;") and so long as we shall remember that of Solomon, "He who says that the wicked are just, shall be accursed among the people, and odious to nations, for they who reprove them shall have better hopes." And again, "Respect not with reverence thy neighbour in his ruin, nor forbear to speak in time of salvation." And as long also as we forget not this, "Root out those who are led

to death, and forbear not to redeem them who are murdered ;” because, as the same prophet says, “ Riches shall not profit in the day of wrath, but justice delivereth from death.” And “ If the just indeed be hardly saved, where shall the wicked and sinner appear ?” If, as I said, thou scorn us, who obey these texts, the dark flood of hell shall without doubt eternally drown thee in that deadly whirlpool, and those terrible streams of fire that shall ever torment and never consume thee, and then shall the confession of thy pains and sorrow for thy sins be altogether too late and unprofitable to one, who now in this accepted time and day of salvation deferreth his conversion to a more righteous way of life.

§ 37. And here, indeed, if not before, was this lamentable history of the miseries of our time to have been brought to a conclusion, that I might no further discourse of the deeds of men ; but that I may not be thought timid or weary, whereby I might the less carefully avoid that saying of Isaiah, “ Woe be to them who call good evil, and evil good, placing darkness for light, and light for darkness, bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter, who seeing see not, and hearing hear not, whose hearts are overshadowed with a thick and black cloud of vices ;” I will briefly set down the threatenings which are denounced against these five aforesaid lascivious horses, the frantic followers of Pharaoh, through whom his army is wilfully urged forward to their utter destruction in the Red Sea, and also against such others, by the sacred oracles, with whose holy testimonies the frame of this our little work is, as it were, roofed in, that it may not be subject to the showers of the envious, which otherwise would be poured thereon. Let, therefore, God’s holy prophets, who are to mortal men the mouth of God, and the organ of the Holy Ghost, forbidding evils, and favouring goodness, answer for us as well now as formerly, against the stubborn and proud princes of this our age, that they may not say we menace them

with such threats, and such great terrors of our own invention only, and with rash and over zealous meddling. For to no wise man is it doubtful how far more grievous the sins of this our time are than those of the primitive age, when the apostle said, “Any one transgressing the law, being convicted by two or three witnesses, shall die, how much worse punishment think ye then that he deserveth, who shall trample under his foot the Son of God?”

§ 38. And first of all appears before us Samuel (by God’s commandment) the establisher of a lawful kingdom, dedicated to God before his birth, undoubtedly known by marvellous signs, to be a true prophet unto all the people, from Dan even to Bersheba, out of whose mouth the Holy Ghost thundereth to all the potentates of the world, denouncing Saul the first king of the Hebrews, only because he did not accomplish some matters commanded him of our Lord, in these words which follow: “Thou hast done foolishly, neither yet hast thou kept the commandments of our Lord thy God, that he hath given thee in charge; which if thou hadst not committed, even now had our Lord prepared thy reign over Israel for ever, but thy kingdom shall no farther arise.” And what did he commit, whether it were adultery, or murder, like to the offences of the present time? No truly, but broke in part one of God’s commandments, for, as one of our writers says, “The question is not of the quality of the sin, but of the violating of the precept.” Also when he endeavoured to answer (as he thought) the objections of Samuel, and after the fashion of men wisely to make excuses for his offence in this manner: “Yea I have obeyed the voice of our Lord, and walked in the way through which he hath sent me:” with this rebuke was he corrected by him: “What! will our Lord have burnt offerings or oblations, and not rather that the voice of our Lord should be obeyed? Obedience is better than oblations,

and to hearken unto him, better than to offer the fat of rams. For as it is the sin of soothsaying to resist, so is it the offence of idolatry not to obey; in regard therefore that thou hast cast away the word of our Lord, he hath also cast thee away that thou be not king." And a little after, "Our Lord hath this day rent the kingdom of Israel from thee, and delivered it up to thy neighbour, a man better than thyself. The triumph of Israel truly will not spare, and will not be bowed with repentance, neither yet is he a man that he should repent;" that is to say, upon the stony hearts of the wicked: wherein it is to be noted how he saith, that to be disobedient unto God is the sin of idolatry. Let not therefore our wicked transgressors (while they do not openly sacrifice to the gods of the Gentiles) flatter themselves that they are not idolaters, whilst they tread like swine the most precious pearls of Christ under their feet.

§ 39. But although this one example as an invincible affirmation might abundantly suffice to correct the wicked: yet, that by the mouths of many witnesses all the offences of Britain may be proved, let us pass to the rest. What happened to David for numbering his people, when the prophet Gad spake unto him in this sort? Thus saith our Lord: "The choice of three things is offered thee, choose which thou wilt, that I may execute it upon thee. Shall there befall thee a famine for seven years, or shalt thou fly three months before thine enemies, and they pursue thee, or shall there be three days' pestilence in thy land." For being brought into great straits by this condition, and willing rather to fall into the hands of God who is merciful, than into those of men, he was humbled with the slaughter of seventy thousand of his subjects, and unless with the affection of an apostolic charity, he had desired to die himself for his countrymen, that the plague might not further consume them, saying, "I am he that have offended, I the shepherd have dealt unjustly; but these sheep, what have they

sinned? Let thy hand (I beseech thee) be turned against me, and against the house of my father;" he would have atoned for the unadvised pride of his heart with his own death. For what doth the Scripture afterwards declare of his son? "And Solomon wrought that which was not pleasing before our Lord, and he did not fill up the measure of his good deeds by following the Lord like his father David. And our Lord said unto him; because thou hast thus behaved thyself, and not observed my covenant and precepts, which I have commanded thee, breaking it asunder; I will divide thy kingdom, and give the same unto thy servant."

§ 40. Hear now likewise what fell upon the two sacrilegious kings of Israel (even such as ours are), Jeroboam and Baasha, unto whom the sentence and doom of our Lord is by the prophet in this way directed: "For what cause have I exalted thee a prince over Israel, in regard that they have provoked me by their vanities. Behold I will stir up after Baasha and after his house, and I will give over his house as the house of Jeroboam the son of Nebat. Whoso of his blood shall die in the city, the dogs shall eat him, and the dead carcass of him that dieth in the field, shall the fowls of the air eat." What doth he also threaten unto that wicked king of Israel, a worthy companion of the former, by whose collusion and his wife's deceit, innocent Naboth was for his father's vineyard put to death, when the holy mouth of Elias, yea, the selfsame mouth that was instructed with the fiery speech of our Lord, thus spake unto him: "Hast thou killed and also taken possession, and after this wilt thou yet add more. Thus saith our Lord, in this very place, wherein the dogs have licked the blood of Naboth, they shall lick up thy blood also." Which fell out afterwards in that very sort, as we have certain proof. But lest perchance (as befel Ahab also) the lying spirit which pronounceth vain things in the mouths of your prophets may seduce you,

hearken to the words of the Prophet Micaiah: "Behold God hath suffered the spirit of lying to possess the mouths of all thy prophets that do here remain, and our Lord hath pronounced evil against thee." For even now it is certain that there are some teachers inspired with a contrary spirit, preaching and affirming rather what is pleasing, however depraved, than what is true: whose words are softer than oil, and the same are darts, who say, peace, peace, and there shall be no peace to them, who persevere in their sins, as says the prophet in another place also: "It is not for the wicked to rejoice, saith our Lord."

§ 41. Azarias also, the son of Obed, spoke unto Asa, who returned from the slaughter of the army of ten hundred thousand Ethiopians, saying, "Our Lord is with you, while you remain with him, and if you will seek him out, he will be found by you, and if you will leave him, he will leave you also." For if Jehoshaphat, for only assisting a wicked king, was thus reproved by the Prophet Jehu, the son of Ananias, saying, "If thou givest aid to a sinner, or lovest them whom our Lord doth hate, the wrath of God doth therefore hang over thee," what shall become of them, who are fettered in the snares of their own offences? whose sin we must of necessity hate, if not their souls, if we wish to fight in the army of our Lord, according to the words of the Psalmist, "Hate ye evil, who love our Lord." What was said to Jehoram, the son of the above-named Jehoshaphat, that most horrible murderer (who being himself a bastard, slew his noble brethren, that he might possess the throne in their place), by the prophet Elias, who was the chariot and charioteer of Israel? "Thus speaketh the Lord God of thy father David. Because thou hast not walked in the way of thy father Jehoshaphat, and in the ways of Asa the king of Judah, but hast walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, and in adultery according to the behaviour of the house of Ahab, and hast

moreover killed thy brethren, the sons of Jehoshaphat, men far better than thyself; behold our Lord shall strike thee and thy children with a mighty plague." And a little afterwards, "And thou shalt be very sick of a disease of thy belly, until thy entrails shall together with the malady itself, from day to day, come forth out of thee." And listen also what the prophet Zachariah, the son of Jehoiades, menaced to Joash, the king of Israel, when he abandoned our Lord even as ye now do, and the prophet spoke in this manner to the people: "Thus saith our Lord, Why do ye transgress the commandments of our Lord and do not prosper? Because ye have left our Lord, he will also leave you."

§ 42. What shall I mention of Isaiah, the first and chief of the prophets, who beginneth his prophecy, or rather vision, in this way: "Hear, O ye heavens, and O thou earth conceive in thine ears, because our Lord hath spoken, I have nourished children, and exalted them, but they themselves have despised me. The ox hath known his owner, and the ass his master's crib, but Israel hath not known me, and my people hath not understood." And a little further with threatenings answerable to so great a folly, he saith, "The daughter of Sion shall be utterly left as a tabernacle in the vineyard, and as a hovel in the cucumber garden, and a city that is sacked." And especially convening and accusing the princes, he saith, "Hear the word of our Lord (O ye princes of Sodom), perceive ye the law of our Lord, O ye people of Gomorrah." Wherein it is to be noted, that unjust kings are termed the princes of Sodom, for our Lord, forbidding sacrifices and gifts to be offered to him by such persons, and seeing that we greedily receive those offerings which in all nations are displeasing unto God, and to our own destruction suffer them not to be bestowed on the poor and needy, speak thus to them who, laden with riches, are likewise given to offend on this head: "Offer no more your sacrifice in

vain, your incense is abomination unto me." And again he denounceth them thus: "And when ye shall stretch out your hands, I will turn away mine eyes from you, and when ye shall multiply your prayers, I will not hear." And he declareth wherefore he does this, saying, "Your hands are full of blood." And likewise showing how he may be appeased, he says, "Be ye washed, be ye clean, take away the evil of your thoughts from mine eyes, cease to do evil, learn to do well, seek for judgment, succour the oppressed, do justice to the pupil or orphan." And then assuming as it were the part of a reconciling mediator, he adds, "Though your sins shall be as scarlet, they shall be made white as snow: though they shall be as red as the little worm, they shall be as white as wool. If ye shall be willing and will hear me, ye shall feed on the good things of the land; but if ye will not, and shall provoke me unto wrath, the sword shall devour you."

§ 43. Receive ye the true and public avoucher, witnessing, without any falsehood or flattery, the reward of your good and evil, not like the soothing humble lips of your parasites, which whisper poisons into your ears. And also directing his sentence against ravenous judges, he saith thus: "Thy princes are unfaithful, companions of thieves, all love gifts, hunt after rewards, they do no justice to the orphan, the widow's cause entereth not unto them. For this saith our Lord God of Hosts, the strong one of Israel. Alas, I will take consolation upon my foes, and be revenged upon mine enemies, and the heinous sinners shall be broken to powder, and offenders together with them and all who have left our Lord, shall be consumed." And afterwards, "The eyes of the lofty man shall be brought low, and the height of men hath bowed down." And again, "Woe be to the wicked, evil befall him, for he shall be rewarded according to his handy-work." And a little after, "Woe be unto you who arise early to follow drunkenness, and to

drink even to the very evening, that ye may fume with wine. The harp, and the lyre, and the tabor, and the pipe, and wine are in your banquets, and the work of our Lord ye respect not, neither yet consider ye the works of his hands. Therefore is my people led captive away, because they have not had knowledge, and their nobles have perished with famine, and their multitude hath withered away with thirst. Therefore hath hell enlarged and dilated his spirit, and without measure opened his mouth, and his strong ones, and his people, and his lofty and glorious ones, shall descend down unto him." And afterwards, "Woe be unto you who are mighty for the drinking of wine, and strong men for the procuring of drunkenness, who justify the wicked for rewards, and deprive the just man of his justice. For this cause even as the tongue of the fire devoureth the stubble, and as the heat of the flame burneth up, so shall their root be as the ashes, and their branch shall rise up as the dust. For they have cast away the law of our Lord of Hosts, and despised the speech of the holy one of Israel. In all these the fury of our Lord is not turned away, but as yet his hand is stretched out."

§ 44. And further on, speaking of the day of judgment and the unspeakable fears of sinners, he says, "Howl ye, because the day of our Lord is near at hand (if so near at that time, what shall it now be thought to be?) for destruction shall proceed from God. For this shall all hands be dissolved, and every man's heart shall wither away, and be bruised, tortures and dolours shall hold them, as a woman in labour so shall they be grieved, every man shall at his neighbour stand astonished, burned faces shall be their countenances. Behold, the day of our Lord shall come, fierce and full of indignation, and of wrath, and fury, to turn the earth into a desert, and break her sinners in small pieces from off her, because the stars of heaven and the brightness of them, shall not unfold their light, the sun in his rising

shall be covered over with darkness, and the moon shall not shine in her season, and I will visit upon the evils of the world, and against the wicked, their own iniquity, and I will make the pride of the unfaithful to cease, and the arrogancy of the strong, I will bring low." And again, "Behold our Lord will disperse the earth, and he will strip her naked, and afflict her face, and scatter her inhabitants, and as the people, so shall be the priest, and as the slave, so shall be his lord, as the handmaid so shall be her lady, as the purchaser, so shall be the seller, as the usurer, so shall be he that borroweth, as he who demandeth, so shall he be that oweth. With dispersing shall the earth be scattered, and with sacking shall she be spoiled. For our Lord hath spoken this word. The earth hath bewailed, and hath flitted away, the world hath run to nothing, she is weakened by her inhabitants, because they have transgressed laws, changed right, brought to ruin the eternal truce. For this shall malediction devour the earth."

§ 45. And afterwards, "They shall lament all of them who now in heart rejoice, the delight of the timbrels hath ceased, the sound of the gladsome shall be silent, the sweetness of the harp shall be hushed, they shall not with singing drink their wine, bitter shall the potion be to the drinkers thereof. The city of vanity is wasted, every house is shut up, no man entering in; an outcry shall be in the streets over the wine, all gladness is forsaken, the joy of the land is transferred, solitariness is left in the town, and calamity shall oppress the gates, because these things shall be in the midst of the land, and in the midst of the people." And a little further, "Swerving from the truth, they have wandered out of the right way, with the straggling of transgressors have they gone astray. Fear and intrapping falls, and a snare upon thee who art the inhabitant of the earth. And it shall come to pass: Whoso shall flee from the voice of the fear, shall tumble down into the intrapping

pit, and whoso shall deliver himself out of the downfall, shall be caught in the intangling snare: because the flood-gates from aloft shall be opened, and the foundations of the earth shall be shaken. With bruising shall the earth be broken, with commotion shall she be moved, with tossing shall she be shaken like a drunken man, and she shall be taken away as if she were a pavilion of one night's pitching, and her iniquities shall hang heavy upon her, and she shall fall down, and shall not attempt to rise again. And it shall be, that our Lord in the same day shall look on the warfare of heaven on high, and on the kings of the earth, who are upon the earth, and they shall be gathered together in the bundle of one burden into the lake, and shall there be shut up in prison, and after many days shall they be visited. And the moon shall blush, and the sun be confounded, when our Lord of Hosts shall reign in Mount Sion and in Jerusalem, and be glorified in the sight of his seniors."

§ 46. And after a while, giving a reason why he threateneth in that sort, he says thus, "Behold the hand of our Lord is not shortened that he cannot save, neither is his ear made heavy that he may not hear. But your iniquities have divided between you and your God, and your offences have hid his face from you, that he might not hear. For your hands are defiled with blood, and your fingers with iniquity: your lips have spoken lying, and your tongue uttereth iniquity. There is none who calleth on justice, neither is there he who judgeth truly, but they trust in nothing, and speak vanities, and have conceived grief, and brought forth iniquity." And a little after, "Their works are unprofitable, and the work of iniquity is in their hands, their feet run into evil, and make haste that they may shed the innocent blood; their thoughts are unprofitable thoughts, spoil and confusion are in their ways, and the way of peace they have not known, and in their steps there is no

judgment, their paths are made crooked unto them, every one who treadeth in them is ignorant of peace; in this respect is judgment removed far off from you, and justice taketh no hold on you." And after a few words, "And judgment hath been turned back, and justice hath stood afar off, because truth hath fallen down in the streets, and equity could not enter in, and truth is turned to oblivion, and whoso hath departed from evil, hath lain open to spoil. And our Lord hath seen, and it was not pleasing in his eyes, because there is not judgment."

§ 47. And thus far may it suffice among many, to have recited a few sentences out of the prophet Isaiah.

But now with diligent ears hearken unto him, who was foreknown before he was formed in the belly, sanctified before he came out of the womb, and appointed a prophet in all nations: I mean Jeremiah, and hear what he hath pronounced of foolish people and cruel kings, beginning his prophecy in this mild and gentle manner.

"And the word of God was spoken unto me saying, Go and cry in the ears of Jerusalem, and thou shalt pronounce, Hear the word of our Lord, thou house of Jacob, and all ye kindred of the house of Israel: Thus saith our Lord; What iniquity have your fathers found in me, who have been far removed from me, and walked after vanity, and are become vain, and have not said, Where is he who made us go up out of the land of Egypt?" And after a few words, "From the beginning of thine age thou hast broken my yoke, violated my bands, and said, I will not serve, I have planted thee my chosen vine, all true seed. How art thou therefore converted into naughtiness? O strange vine? If thou shalt wash thee with nitre, and multiply unto thee the herb borith, thou art spotted in my sight with thine iniquity, saith our Lord." And afterwards, "Why will ye contend with me in judgment? Ye have all forsaken me, saith our Lord, in vain have I corrected your chil-

dren, they have not received discipline. Hear ye the word of our Lord. Am I made a solitariness unto Israel, or a late bearing land? why therefore hath my people said, we have departed, we will come no more unto thee? Doth the virgin forget her ornament, or the spouse her gorget? my people truly hath forgotten me for innumerable days. Because my people are foolish, they have not known me, they are unwise and mad children. They are wise to do evil, but to do well they have been ignorant.”

§ 48. Then the prophet speaketh in his own person saying, “O Lord thine eyes do respect faith, thou hast stricken them, and they have not sorrowed, thou hast broken them and they have refused to receive discipline, they have made their faces harder than the rock, and will not return.” And also our Lord: “Declare ye this same to the house of Jacob, and make it to be heard in Judah, saying, Hear, ye foolish people who have no heart, who having eyes see not, and ears hear not. Will ye not therefore dread me, saith our Lord, and will ye not conceive grief from my countenance, who have placed the sand as the bound of the sea, an eternal commandment which she shall not break, and her waves shall be moved, and they cannot, and her surge shall swell, and yet not pass the same? But to this people is framed an incredulous and an exasperating heart, they have retired and gone their ways, and not in their heart said, Let us fear our Lord God.” And again, “Because there are found among my people wicked ones, framing wiles to entangle as if they were fowlers, setting snares and gins to catch men; as a net that is full of birds, so are their houses filled with deceits. Therefore are they magnified and enriched, they are become gross and fat, and have neglected my speeches most vilely, the orphans’ cause they have not decided, and the justice of the poor they have not adjudged. What! shall I not visit these

men, saith our Lord? or shall not my soul be revenged upon such a nation?"

§ 49. But God forbid that ever should happen unto you, that which followeth, "Thou shalt speak all these words unto them, and they shall not hear thee, and thou shalt call them, and they shall not answer thee, and thou shalt say unto them, this is the nation that hath not heard the voice of their Lord God, nor yet received discipline, faith hath perished, and been taken away from out of their mouth." And after some few speeches, "Whoso falleth doth he not arise again, and whoso is turned away, shall he not return again? why therefore is this people in Jerusalem, with a contentious aversion alienated? they have apprehended lying, and they will not come back again. I have been attentive, and hearkened diligently, no man speaketh what is good. There is none who repenteth of his sin, saying, What have I done? All are turned unto their own course, like a horse passing with violence to battle. The kite in the sky hath known her time, the turtle, and swallow, and stork have kept the season of their coming, but my people hath not known the judgment of God." And the prophet, being smitten with fear at so wonderful a blindness, and unspeakable drunkenness of the sacrilegious, and lamenting them who did not lament themselves (even according to the present behaviour of these our unfortunate tyrants), beseecheth of our Lord, that an augmentation of tears might be granted him, speaking in this manner, "I am contrite upon the contrition of the daughter of my people, astonishment hath possessed me: is there no balm in Gilead, or is there no physician there? Why therefore is not the wound of the daughter of my people healed? Who shall give water unto my head, and to mine eyes a fountain of tears, and I will day and night bewail the slaughtered of my people? who will grant me in the wilderness the inn

of passengers, and I will utterly leave my people, and depart from them, because they are all of them adulterers, a root of offenders, and they have bent their tongue as the bow of lying, and not of truth, they are comforted in the earth, because they have passed from evil to evil, and not known me, saith our Lord." And again: "And our Lord hath said, Because they have forsaken my law, which I have given them, and not heard my voice, nor walked thereafter, and have wandered away after the wickedness of their own heart, in that respect our Lord of Hosts, the God of Israel, saith these words, Behold I will feed this people with wormwood, and give them to drink the water of gall." And a little after (speaking in the person of God), "See therefore thou do not pray for this people, nor assume thou for them praise and prayer, because I will not hear in the time of their outcry unto me, and of their affliction."

§ 50. What then shall now our miserable governors do, these few who found out the narrow way and left the large, were by God forbidden to pour out their prayers for such as persevered in their evils, and so highly provoked his wrath, against whom on the contrary side when they returned with all their hearts unto God (his divine Majesty being unwilling that the soul of man should perish, but calling back the castaway that he should not utterly be destroyed) the same prophets could not procure the heavenly revenge, because Jonas, when he desired the like most earnestly against the Ninevites, could not obtain it. But in the meanwhile omitting our own words, let us rather hear what the prophetic trumpet soundeth in our ears speaking thus: "If thou shalt say in thy heart, why have these evils befallen? For the multitude of thine iniquities. If the Ethiopian can change his skin, or the leopard his sundry spots, ye may also do well when ye have learned evil," ever supposing that ye will not. And afterwards:

“ These words doth our Lord say to this people, who have loved to move their feet, and have not rested, and not pleased our Lord ; now shall he remember their iniquities, and visit their offences, and our Lord said unto me, Pray thou not for this people to work their good, when they shall fast, I will not hear their prayers ; and if they offer burnt sacrifices and oblations, I will not receive them.” And again, “ And our Lord said unto me, if Moses and Samuel shall stand before me, my soul is not bent to this people, cast them out away from my face, and let them depart.” And after a few words : “ Who shall have pity on thee Jerusalem, or who shall be sorrowful for thee, or who shall pray for thy peace ? Thou hast left me (saith our Lord) and gone away backward, and I will stretch forth my hand over thee, and kill thee.” And somewhat after : “ Thus saith our Lord, Behold I imagine a thought against you, let every man return from his evil course, and make straight your ways and endeavours, who said, we despair, we will go after our own thoughts, and every one of us will do the naughtiness of his evil heart. Thus therefore saith our Lord. Ask the Gentiles, who hath heard such horrible matters, which the Virgin Israel hath too often committed ? Shall there fail from the rock of the field, the snow of Libanus ? or can the waters be drawn dry that gush out cold and flowing ? because my people hath forgotten me.” And somewhat also after this, propounding unto them an election, he speaking saith, “ Thus saith our Lord, Do ye judgment and justice, and deliver him who by power is oppressed out of the hand of the malicious accuser ; and for the stranger, and orphan, and widow, do not provoke their sorrow, neither yet work ye unjustly the grief of others, nor shed ye forth the innocent blood. For if indeed ye shall accomplish this word, there shall enter in through the gates of this house, kings of the lineage of David, sitting upon his throne. But if ye will not hearken unto these words,

by myself I have sworn (saith our Lord) that this house shall be turned into a desert." And again (for he spoke of a wicked king), "As I live (saith our Lord) if so be that Jechonias shall be a ring on my right hand, I will pluck him away, and give him over into the hands of them who seek his life."

§ 51. Moreover, holy Abraham crieth out saying, "Woe be unto them who build a city in blood, and prepare a town in iniquities, saying, are not these things from our Almighty Lord? and many people have failed in fire, and many nations have been diminished." And thus complaining, he begins his prophecy: "How long (O Lord) shall I call, and thou wilt not hear? shall I cry out unto thee, to what end hast thou given me labours and griefs, to behold misery and impiety?" And on the other side, "And judgment was sat upon, and the judge hath taken in regard hereof, the law is rent in pieces, and judgment is not brought fully to his conclusion, because the wicked through power treadeth the just under foot. In this respect hath passed forth perverse judgment."

§ 52. And mark ye also what blessed Hosea the prophet says of princes: "For that they have transgressed my covenant, and ordained against my law, and exclaimed, we have known thee, because thou art against Israel. They have persecuted good, as if it were evil. They have reigned for themselves and not by me, they have held a principality, neither yet have they acknowledged me."

§ 53. And hear ye likewise the holy Prophet Amos, in this sort threatening: "In three heinous offences of the sons of Judah, and in four I will not convert them, for that they have cast away the law of our Lord, and not kept his commandments, but their vanities have seduced them. And I will send fire upon Judah, and it shall eat the foundations of Jerusalem. Thus saith our Lord; in three grievous sins of Israel, and in four I will

not convert them, for that they have sold the just for money, and the poor man for shoes, which they tread upon the dust of the earth, and with buffets they did beat the heads of the poor, and have eschewed the way of the humble." And after a few words: "Seek our Lord and ye shall live, that the house of Joseph may not shine as fire, and the flame devour it, and he shall not be, that can extinguish it. The house of Israel hath hated him who rebuketh in the gates, and abhorred the upright word." Which Amos, being forbidden to prophecy in Israel, without any fawning flattery, saith in answer, "I was not a prophet, nor yet the son of a prophet, but a goatherd; I was plucking sycamores and our Lord took me from my herd, and our Lord said unto me, go thy way and prophecy against my people of Israel, and now hear thou the word of our Lord (for he directed his speech unto the king), thou sayest, do not prophecy against Israel, and thou shalt not assemble troops against the house of Jacob. For which cause our Lord saith thus, thy wife in the city shall play the harlot, and thy sons and daughters shall die by the sword, and thy ground be measured by the cord, and thou in a polluted land shalt end thy life, but for Israel, she shall be led from his own country a captive." And afterwards, "Hear therefore these words, ye who do outrageously afflict the poor, and practise your mighty power against the needy of the earth, who say, when shall the month pass over that we may purchase, and the sabbaths that we may open the treasuries." And within a few words after, "Our Lord doth swear against the pride of Jacob, if he shall in contempt forget your actions, and if in these the earth shall not be disturbed, and every inhabitant thereof fall to lamentation, and the final end as a flood ascend, and I will turn your festival days into wailing, and cast haircloth on the loins of every one, and on the head of every man baldness, and make him as the mourning of one over his beloved, and

those who are with him, as the day of sorrow." And again, "In the sword shall die all the sinners of my people, who say, evils shall not approach, nor yet shall light upon us."

§ 54. And listen ye likewise, what holy Michah the prophet hath spoken, saying, "Hearken, ye tribes. And what shall adorn the city? shall not fire? and the house of the wicked hoarding up unjust treasures, and with injury unrighteousness. If the wrongful dealer shall be justified in the balance, and deceitful weights in the scales, by which they have heaped up their riches in ungodliness."

§ 55. And bear also what threatens the famous prophet Zephaniah thundereth out: (saith he) "The great Zephaniah. day of our Lord is near, it is at hand, and very swiftly approacheth. The voice of the day of our Lord is appointed to be bitter and mighty, that day, a day of wrath, a day of tribulation and necessity, a day of clouds and mist, a day of the trumpet and outcry, a day of misery and extermination, a day of darkness and dimness upon the strong cities and high corners. And I will bring men to tribulation, and they shall go as if they were blind, because they have offended our Lord, and I will pour out their blood as dust, and their flesh as the dung of oxen, and their silver and gold shall not be able to deliver them in the day of the wrath of our Lord. And in the fire of his zeal shall the whole earth be consumed, when the Lord shall accomplish his absolute end, and bring solitariness upon all the inhabitants of the earth. Come together and be joined in one, thou nation without discipline, before ye be made as the fading flower, before the wrath of our Lord falleth upon ye."

§ 56. And give ear also unto that which the prophet Haggai speaketh: "Thus saith our Lord, I will once Haggai. move the heaven, and earth, and sea, and dry land, and I will drive away the thrones of kings, and root out the

power of the kings of the Gentiles, and I will chase away the chariots of those who mount upon them.”

§ 57. Now also behold what Zacharias the son of Addo, that chosen prophet, said, beginning his prophecy in this manner: “Return to me, and I will return unto ye (saith our Lord), and be not like your fathers, to whom the former prophets have imputed, saying, Thus saith our Almighty Lord, Turn away from your ways, and they have not marked whereby they might obediently hear me.” And afterwards, “And the angel asked me, what dost thou see? and I said, I see a flying scythe, which containeth in length twenty cubits. The malediction which hath proceeded upon the face of the whole earth: because every one of her thieves shall be punished even to the death, and I will throw him away, saith our Almighty Lord, and he shall enter into the house of fury, and into the house of swearing falsehood in my name.”

§ 58. Holy Malachy the prophet also saith, “Behold the day of our Lord shall come, inflamed as a furnace, and all proud men, and all workers of iniquity shall be as stubble, and the approaching day of the Lord of Hosts shall set them on fire, which shall not leave a root nor a bud of them.”

§ 59. And hearken ye also what holy Job debateth of the beginning and end of the ungodly, saying, “For what purpose do the wicked live, and have grown old dishonestly, and their issue hath been according to their own desire, and their sons before their faces, and their houses are fruitful, and no fear nor yet the scourge of our Lord is upon them. Their cow hath not been abortive, their great with young hath brought forth her young ones and not missed, but remaineth as an eternal breed: and their children rejoice, and taking the psaltery and harp, have finished their days in felicity, and fallen peaceably asleep down into hell.” Doth God therefore

not behold the works of the wicked? Not so truly ; “ But the candle of the ungodly shall be extinguished, and destruction shall fall upon them, and pains as of one in childbirth, shall withhold them from wrath ; and they shall be as chaff before the wind, and as the dust which the whirlwind hath carried away. Let all goodness fail his children, let his eyes behold his own slaughter, nor yet by our Lord let him be redeemed.” And a little after he saith of the same men, “ Who have ravenously taken the flock with the shepherd, and driven away the beast of the orphans, and engaged the ox of the widow, and deceiving, have declined from the way of necessity. They have reaped other men’s fields before the time, the poor have laboured in the vineyards of the mighty without hire and meat, they have made many to sleep naked without garments, of the covering of their life they have bereaved them.” And somewhat afterwards, when he had thoroughly understood their works, he delivered them over to darkness. “ Let therefore his portion be accursed from the earth, let his plantings bring forth witherings ; let him for this be rewarded according to his dealings : let every wicked man like the unsound wood be broken in pieces. For arising in his wrath hath he overthrown the impotent. Wherefore truly shall he have no trust of his life, when he shall begin to grow diseased, let him not hope for health, but fall into languishing. For his pride hath been the hurt of many, and he is become decayed and rotten, as the mallows in the scorching heat, or as the ear of corn when it falleth off from its stubble.” And afterwards, “ If his children shall be many, they shall be turned to the slaughter, and if he gather together silver as if it were earth, and likewise purify his gold as if it were dirt, all these same shall the just obtain.”

§ 60. Hear ye moreover what blessed Esdras, that cyclopædia of the divine law, threateneth in his discourse. “ Thus saith our Lord God : My right hand shall

not be sparing upon sinners, neither shall the sword cease over them who spill the innocent blood on the earth. Fire shall proceed from out of my wrath, and devour the foundations of the earth, and sinners as if they were inflamed straw. Woe be unto them who offend, and observe not my commandments, saith our Lord, I will not forbear them. Depart from me ye apostatizing children, and do not pollute my sanctuary. God doth know who offend against him, and he will therefore deliver them over to death and to slaughter. For now have many evils passed over the round compass of the earth. A sword of fire is sent out against you, and who is he that shall restrain it? shall any man repulse a lion that hungereth in the wood? or shall any one quench out the fire when the straw is burning? our Lord God will send out evils, and who is he that shall repress them? and fire will pass forth from out of his wrath, and who shall extinguish it? it shall brandishing shine, and who will not fear it? it shall thunder, and who will not shake with dread? God will threaten all, and who will not be terrified? before his face the earth doth tremble, and the foundations of the sea shake from the depths."

§ 61. And mark ye also what Ezechiel the renowned prophet, and admirable beholder of the four evangelical creatures, speaketh of wicked offenders, unto whom pitifully lamenting beforehand the scourge that hung over Israel, our Lord doth say, "Too far hath the iniquity of the house of Israel and Judah prevailed, because the earth is filled with iniquity and uncleanness. Behold I am, mine eyes shall not spare, nor will I take pity." And afterwards, "Because the earth is replenished with people, and the city fraughted with iniquity, I will also turn away the force of their power, and their holy things shall be polluted, prayer shall approach and sue for peace, and it shall not be obtained." And somewhat after, "The word of our Lord (quoth he) was spoken unto me

saying, Thou son of man, the land that shall so far sin against me as to commit an offence, I will stretch forth my hand upon her, and break in pieces her foundation of bread, and send upon her famine, and take away mankind and cattle from her; and if these three men, Noah, Daniel, and Job, be in the midst of her, they shall not deliver her, but they in their justice shall be saved, saith our Lord. If so be that also I shall bring in evil beasts upon the land and punish her, she likewise shall be turned to destruction, and there shall not be one who shall have free passage from the face of the beasts, and although these three men are in the midst of her, as I live (saith our Lord) their sons and daughters shall not be preserved, but they alone shall be saved, and as for the land it shall fall to confusion." And again, "The son shall not receive the unrighteousness of the father; neither the father the son's unrighteousness. The justice of the just shall be upon himself. And the unjust man, if he turneth him away from all the iniquities which he hath done, and keepeth all my commandments, and doth justice and abundance of mercy, he shall live in life and shall not die. All his sins, whatsoever he hath committed, shall have no further being; he shall live the life in his own justice which he hath performed. Do I with my will voluntarily wish the death of the unrighteous (saith our Lord) rather than that he should return from his evil way and live? But when the just shall turn himself away from his justice, and do iniquity, according to all the iniquities which the unrighteous hath committed, all the just actions (which he hath done) shall remain no further in memory. In his offence wherein he hath fallen, and in his sins in which he hath transgressed, he shall die." And within some words afterwards: "And all nations shall understand, that the house of Israel are led captive away for their offences, because they have forsaken me. And I have turned my face from them, and yielded them over into

the hands of their enemies, and all have perished by the sword; according unto their unclean sins, and after their iniquities have I dealt with them, and turned my face away from them.”

§ 62. This which I have spoken may suffice concerning the threats of the holy prophets: only I have thought it necessary to intermingle in this little work of mine, not only these menaces, but also a few words borrowed out of the wisdom of Solomon, to declare unto kings matter of exhortation or instruction, that they may not say I am willing to load the shoulders of men with heavy and insupportable burthens of words, but not so much as once with mine own finger (that is, with speech of consolation) to move the same. Let us therefore hear what the prophet hath spoken to rule us. “Love justice (saith he) ye that judge the earth.” This testimony alone (if it were with a full and perfect heart observed) would abundantly suffice to reform the governors of our country. For if they had loved justice, they would also love God, who is in a sort the fountain and original of all justice. “Serve our Lord in goodness, and seek him in simplicity of heart.” Alas! who shall live (as a certain one before us hath said) when such things are done by our countrymen, if perchance they may be any where accomplished; “Because he is found of those who do not tempt him, he appeareth truly to them who have faith in him.” For these men without respect do tempt God, whose commandments with stubborn despite they contemn, neither yet do they keep to him their faith, unto whose oracles be they pleasing, or somewhat severe, they turn their backs and not their faces. “For perverse thoughts do separate from God,” and this in the tyrants of our time very plainly appeareth. But why doth our meanness intermeddle in this so manifest a determination? Let therefore him who alone is true (as we have said) speak for us, I mean the Holy Ghost, of whom it is now pronounced, “The Holy Ghost

verily will avoid the counterfeiting of discipline." And again, "Because the spirit of God hath filled the globe of the earth." And afterwards (showing with an evident judgment the end of the evil and righteous) he saith, "How is the hope of the wicked as the down that is blown away with the wind, and as the smoke that with the blast is dispersed, and as the slender froth that with a storm is scattered, and as the memory of a guest who is a passenger of one day. But the just shall live for ever, and with God remaineth their reward, and their cogitation is with the highest. Therefore shall they receive the kingdom of glory, and the crown of beauty from the hand of our Lord. Because with his right hand he will protect them, and with his holy arm defend them." For very far unlike in quality are the just and ungodly, as our Lord verily hath spoken, saying, "Them who honour me I will honour, and whoso despise me shall be of no estimation."

§ 63. But let us pass over to the rest: "Hearken, (saith he) all ye kings, and understand ye, learn, ye judges of the bounds of the earth, listen with your ears who keep multitudes in awe, and please yourselves in the troops of nations. Because power is given unto you from God, and puissance from the highest, who will examine your actions, and sift your thoughts. For that when ye were ministers of his kingdom, ye have not judged uprightly, nor kept the law of justice, nor yet walked according to his will. It shall dreadfully and suddenly appear unto you, that a most severe judgment shall be given on them who govern. For to the meaner is mercy granted, but the mighty shall mightily sustain torments. For he shall have no respect of persons, who is the ruler of all, nor yet shall he reverence the greatness of any one, because he himself hath made both small and great, and care alike he hath of all; but for the stronger is at hand a stronger affliction. Unto you therefore (O kings) are these my speeches, that you may

learn wisdom, and not fall away from her. For whoso observeth what things are just, shall be justified, and whoso learneth what things are holy, shall be sanctified."

§ 64. Hitherto have we discoursed no less by the oracles of the prophets, than by her own speeches with the kings of our country, being willing they should know what the prophet hath spoken saying, "As from the face of a serpent, so fly thou from sins: if thou shalt approach unto them they will catch thee, their teeth are the teeth of a lion, such as kill the souls of men." And again, "How mighty is the mercy of our Lord, and his forgiveness to such as turn unto him." And if we have not in us such apostolical zeal, that we may say, "I did verily desire to be anathematized by Christ for my brethren," notwithstanding that we may from the bottom of our hearts speak that prophetic saying, "Alas! that the soul perisheth." And again, "Let us search out our ways, and seek and return unto our Lord: let us lift our hearts together with our hands to God in heaven." And also that of the apostle, "We covet that every one of you should be in the bowels of Christ."

§ 65. And how willingly, as one tossed on the waves of the sea, and now arrived in a desired haven, would I in this place make an end (shame forbidding me further to proceed) did I not behold such great masses of evil deeds done against God by bishops or other priests, or clerks, yea some of our own order, whom as witnesses myself must of necessity first of all stone (according unto the law) with the hard blows of words (lest I should be otherwise reprov'd for partiality towards persons) and then afterwards the people (if as yet they keep their decrees) must pursue with their whole powers the same execution upon them, not to their corporal death but to the death of their vices and their eternal life with God. Yet (as I before said) I crave pardon of them, whose lives I not only praise, but also prefer before all earthly treasure, and of the which (if it may be) yet before my

death I desire and thirst to be a partaker : and so having both my sides defended with the double shields of saints, and by those means invincibly strengthened to sustain all that arise against me, arming moreover my head in place of a helmet with the help of our Lord, and being most assuredly protected with the sundry aids of the prophets, I will boldly proceed notwithstanding the stones of worldly rioters fly never so fast about me.

§ 66. Britain hath priests, but they are unwise ; very many that minister, but many of them impudent ; clerks she hath, but certain of them are deceitful raveners ; pastors (as they are called) but rather wolves prepared for the slaughter of souls (for they provide not for the good of the common people, but covet rather the gluttony of their own bellies), possessing the houses of the church, but obtaining them for filthy lucre's sake ; instructing the laity, but showing withal most depraved examples, vices, and evil manners ; seldom sacrificing, and seldom with clean hearts, standing at the altars ; not correcting the commonalty for their offences, while they commit the same sins themselves ; despising the commandments of Christ, and being careful with their whole hearts to fulfil their own lustful desires, some of them usurping with unclean feet the seat of the apostle Peter ; but for the demerit of their covetousness falling down into the pestilent chair of the traitor Judas ; detracting often, and seldom speaking truly ; hating verity as an open enemy, and favouring falsehoods, as their most beloved brethren ; looking on the just, the poor, and the impotent, with stern countenances, as if they were detested serpents, and reverencing the sinful rich men without any respect of shame, as if they were heavenly angels, preaching with their outward lips that alms are to be disbursed upon the needy, but of themselves not bestowing one halfpenny, concealing the horrible sins of the people, and amplifying injuries offered unto themselves, as if they were done against our Saviour Christ ;

expelling out of their houses their religious mother perhaps, or sisters, and familiarly and indecently entertaining strange women, as if it were for some more secret office, or rather, to speak truly, though fondly (and yet not fondly to me, but to such as commit these matters), debasing themselves unto such bad creatures ; and after all these seeking rather ambitiously for ecclesiastical dignities, than for the kingdom of heaven ; and defending after a tyrannical fashion their achieved preferments, nor ever labouring with lawful manners, to adorn the same ; negligent and dull to listen to the precepts of the holy saints (if ever they did so much as once hear that which full often they ought to hear), but diligent and attentive to the plays and foolish fables of secular men, as if they were the very ways to life, which indeed are but the passages to death ; being hoarse, after the fashion of bulls, with the abundance of fatness, and miserably prompt to all unlawful actions ; bearing their countenances arrogantly aloft, and having nevertheless their inward senses, with tormenting and gnawing consciences, depressed down to the bottom, or rather to the bottomless pit, glad at the gaining of one penny, and at the loss of the like value sad, slothful and dumb in the apostolical decrees (be it for ignorance or rather the burden of their offences), and stopping also the mouths of the learned, but singularly experienced in the deceitful shifts of worldly affairs ; and many of this sort and wicked conversation, violently intruding themselves into the preferments of the church, yea rather buying the same at a high rate, than being any way drawn thereunto, and moreover as unworthy wretches, wallowing (after the fashion of swine) in their old and unhappy puddle of intolerable wickedness, after they have attained unto the seat of the priesthood or episcopal dignity (who neither have been installed or resident on the same), for usurping only the name of priesthood, they have not received the orders or apostolical pre-

eminence, but how can they who are not as yet fully instructed in faith, nor have done penance for their sins, be any way supposed meet and convenient to ascend unto any ecclesiastical degree (that I may not speak of the highest) which none but holy and perfect men, and followers of the apostles, and (to use the words of the teacher of the Gentiles) persons free from reprehension, can lawfully and without the foul offence of sacrilege undertake.

§ 67. For what is so wicked and so sinful as after the example of Simon Magus (even if with other faults he had not been defiled before), for any man with earthly price to purchase the office of a bishop or priest, which with holiness and righteous life alone ought lawfully to be obtained ; but herein they do more wilfully, and desperately err in that they buy their deceitful and unprofitable ecclesiastical degrees, not of the apostles or their successors, but of tyrannical princes, and their father the devil ; yea rather they raise this as a certain roof and covering of all offences, over the frame of their former serious life, that being protected under the shadow thereof, no man should lightly hereafter lay to their charge their old or new wickedness, and hereupon they build their desires of covetousness and gluttony, for that being now the rulers of many they may more freely make havock at their pleasures. For if truly any such offer of purchasing ecclesiastical promotions were made by these impudent sinners (I will not say with St. Peter), but to any holy priest, or godly king, they would no doubt receive the same answer which their father Simon Magus had from the mouth of the apostle Peter, saying : “ Thy money be with thee unto thy perdition.” But (alas !) perhaps they who order and advance these ambitious aspirers, yea they who rather throw them under foot, and for a blessing give them a cursing, whilst of sinners they make them not penitents (which were more consonant to reason), but sacri-

legious and desperate offenders, and in a sort instal Judas, that traitor to his master, in the chair of Peter, and Nicholas, the author of that foul heresy, in the seat of St. Stephen, the martyr, it may be, at first obtained their own priesthood by the same means, and therefore do not greatly dislike in their children, but rather respect the course, that they their fathers did before follow. And also, if finding resistance, in obtaining their dioceses at home, and some, who severely renounce this chaffering of church-livings, they cannot there attain to such a precious pearl, then it doth not so much loath as delight them (after they have carefully sent their messengers beforehand) to cross the seas, and travel over most large countries, that so in the end, yea even with the sale of their whole substance, they may win and compass such a pomp, and such an incomparable glory, or to speak more truly, such a dirty and base deceit, and illusion. And afterwards with great show and magnificent ostentation, or rather madness, returning back to their own native soil, they grow from stoutness to stateliness, and from being used to level their looks to the tops of the mountains, they now lift up their drowsy eyes into the air, even to the highest clouds, and as Novatus, that foul hog, and persecutor of our Lord's precious jewel, did once at Rome, so do these intrude themselves again into their own country, as creatures of a new mould, or rather as instruments of the devil, being even ready in this state and fashion to stretch out violently their hands (not so worthy of the holy altars as of the avenging flames of hell) upon Christ's most holy sacrifices.

§ 68. What do ye therefore (O unhappy people!) expect from such belly beasts? (as the apostle calleth them). Shall your manners be amended by these, who not only do not apply their minds to any goodness, but (according to the upbraiding of the prophet) labour also to deal wickedly? Shall ye be illuminated with such

eyes as are only with greediness cast on those things that lead headlong to vices (that is to say), to the gates of hell? Nay truly, if according to the saying of our Saviour, ye fly not these most ravenous wolves like those of Arabia, or avoid them as Lot, who ran most speedily from the fiery shower of Sodom, up to the mountains, then being blind and led by the blind, ye will both together tumble down into the infernal ditch.

§ 69. But some man perchance will objecting say, that all bishops or all priests (according to our former exception), are not so wickedly given, because they are not defiled with the infamy of schism, pride, or unclean life, which neither we ourselves will deny, but albeit we know them to be chaste, and virtuous, yet will we briefly answer.

What did it profit the high-priest Hely, that he alone did not violate the commandments of our Lord, in taking flesh with forks out of the pots, before the fat was offered unto God, while he was punished with the same revenge of death wherewith his sons were? what one (I beseech ye) of them, whose manners we have before sufficiently declared, hath been martyred like Abel, from malicious jealousy of his more acceptable sacrifice (which with the heavenly fire ascended up into the skies) since they fear the reproach even of an ordinary word? Which of them "hath hated the counsel of the malicious, and not sat with the ungodly," so that of him as a prophet, the same might be verified which was said of Enoch, "Enoch walked with God and was not to be found" in the vanity (forsooth) of the whole world, as then leaving our Lord, and beginning to halt after idolatry? Which of them, like Noah in the time of the Deluge, hath not admitted into the ark of salvation (which is the present church) any adversary unto God, that it may be most apparent that none but innocents or singular penitents, ought to remain in the house of our Lord? Who is he that offering sacrifice like

Examples of  
the Old Tes-  
tament.

Melchisedeck, hath only blessed the conquerors, and them who with the number of three hundred (which was in the sacrament of the Trinity) delivering the just man, have overthrown the deadly armies of the five kings, together with their vanquishing troops, and not coveted the goods of others? Which of them hath like Abraham, at the commandment of God, freely offered his own son on the altar to be slain, that he might accomplish a precept of Christ, agreeable to this saying, thy right eye if it cause thee to offend, ought to be pulled out; and another of the prophet, that he is accursed who withholdeth his sword from shedding blood? Who is he that like Joseph, hath rooted out of his heart the remembrance of an offered injury? Who is he that like Moses, speaking with our Lord in the mountain, and not there terrified with the sounding trumpets, hath in a figurative sense presented unto the incredulous people the two tables, and his horned face which they could not endure to see, but trembled to behold? Which of them, praying for the offences of the people, has from the very bottom of his heart cried out, like unto him saying: "O Lord this people hath committed a grievous sin, which if thou wilt forgive them, forgive it; otherwise blot me guilty out of thy book?"

§ 70. Which of them, inflamed with the admirable zeal of God, hath courageously risen to punish fornication, curing without delay by the present medicine of penance, the affection of filthy lust, lest the fire of the wrath of God should otherwise consume the people, as Phinees the priest did, that by these means justice for ever might be reputed unto him? Which of them hath in moral understanding imitated Joshua, the son of Nun, either for the utter rooting forth (even to the slaughter of the last and least of all) the seven nations out of the land of promise, or for the establishing of spiritual Israel in their places? Which of them hath showed unto the people of God their final bounds beyond Jordan (that it

might be known what was suited to every tribe) in such sort as the aforementioned Phineas and Jesus have wisely divided the land? Who is he that to overthrow the innumerable thousands of Gentiles, adversaries to the chosen people of God, hath, as another Jephtha, for a votive and propitiatory sacrifice, slain his only daughter, (by which is to be understood his own proper will) imitating also therein the apostle, saying, “Not seeking what is profitable to me, but to many, that they may be saved;” which daughter of his met the conquerors with drums and dances, by which are to be understood the lustful desires of the flesh? Which of them, that he might disorder, put to flight, and overthrow the camps of the proud Gentiles, by the number of three hundred, (being, as we before said, the mystery of the blessed Trinity,) and with his men holding in their hands those noble sounding trumpets, (which are prophetic and apostolical senses, according as our Lord said to the prophet, “Exalt thy voice as a trumpet;” and the psalmist of the apostles, “Their sound hath passed throughout the whole earth,”) and bearing also those famous flagons shining in the night with that most glittering fiery light, (which are to be interpreted the bodies of saints joined to good works, and burning with the flame of the Holy Ghost, yea having, as the apostle writes, “This treasure in earthen vessels,”) hath after hewing down the idolatrous grave (by which is morally meant dark and foul desire) marched on like Gideon, with an assured faith in the evident sign of the fleece, which to the Jews was void of the heavenly moisture, but to the Gentiles made wet with the dew of the Holy Ghost?

§ 71. Who is he among them that (earnestly wishing to die to this world, and live to Christ) hath, as another Sampson, utterly cut off such innumerable luxurious banqueters of the Gentiles, while they praised their gods, (by which is meant, while the senses of men extolled these earthly riches, according to the apostle speaking

thus ; “ And covetousness which is idolatry,”) shaking with the power of both his arms the two pillars (by which are to be understood, the wicked pleasures of the soul and body) by which the house of all worldly wickedness is in a sort compacted, and underpropped ? Which of them, like Samuel, with prayers and the burnt sacrifice of a sucking lamb, hath driven away the fear of the Philistines, raised unexpected thunder-claps, and showering clouds, established without flattery a king, deposed him when he displeased God, and anointed another his better in his place and kingdom, and when he shall give to the people his last farewell, shall appear like Samuel in this sort, saying, “ Behold I am ready, speak ye before our Lord and his anointed, whether I ever took away the ox or ass of any man, if I have falsely accused any one, if I have oppressed any body, if I have received a bribe from the hands of any ?” Unto whom it was answered by the people, “ Thou hast not wrongfully charged us, nor oppressed us, nor taken any thing from the hands of any ?” Which of them, like the famous prophet Elias, who consumed with heavenly fire the hundred proud men, and preserved the fifty that humbled themselves ; and afterwards denounced without flattery or dissimulation, the impending death of the unjust king (that sought not the counsel of God by his prophets, but of the idol Accaron), hath utterly overthrown all the prophets of Baal (by which are meant the worldly senses ever bent, as we have already said, to envy and avarice) with the lightning sword (which is the word of God) ? and as the same Elias moved with the zeal of God, after taking away the showers of rain from the land of the wicked, who were now shut up with famine in a strong prison, as it were of penury, for three years and six months, being himself ready to die for thirst in the desert, hath complaining said, “ They have murdered (O Lord) thy prophets, and undermined thine altars, and I alone am left, and they seek my life ?”

§ 72. Which of them, like Elisha, hath punished his dearly beloved disciple, if not with an everlasting leprosy, yet at least by abandoning him, if burthened too much with the weight of worldly covetousness for those very gifts which his master before (although very earnestly entreated thereto) had despised to receive? and which of these among us hath like him revealed unto his servant, (who despaired of life, and on a sudden trembled at the warlike army of the enemies that besieged the city wherein he was,) through the fervency of his prayers poured out unto God; those spiritual visions, so that he might behold a mountain replenished with a heavenly assisting army, of warlike chariots and horsemen, shining with fiery countenances, and that he might also believe that he was stronger to save, than the foe to hurt. And which of them, like the above-named Elisha, with the touch of his body, being dead to the world, but living unto God, shall raise up another, whose fate had been different from his, namely, death to God, but life to his vices, so that instantly revived, he may yield humble thanks to Christ for his unexpected recovery from the hellish torments of his mortal crimes? Which of them hath his lips purified and made clean with the fiery coals carried by the tongues of the cherubim, from off the altar, (that his sins may be wiped away with the humility of confession,) as it is written of Esaias, by whose effectual prayers, together with the aid of the godly King Ezechias, a hundred fourscore and five thousand of the Assyrian army, through the stroke of one angel, without the least print of any appearing wound, were overthrown and slain? Which of them, like blessed Jeremy, for accomplishing the commandments of God, for denouncing the threats thundered out from heaven, and for preaching the truth even to such as would not hear the same, hath suffered loathsome stinking prisons as momentary deaths? And to be brief, what one of them (as the teacher of the

Gentiles said) hath endured like the holy prophets to wander in mountains, in dens, and caves of the earth, to be stoned, to be sawn in sunder, and assailed with all kinds of death, for the name of our Lord?

Examples of  
the New Tes-  
tament.

§ 73. But why do we dwell in examples of the Old Testament as if there were none in the New? Let therefore those (who suppose they can, without any labour at all, under the naked pretence of the name of priesthood, enter this strait and narrow passage of Christian religion) hearken unto me while I recite and gather into one a few of the chiefest flowers out of the large and pleasant meadow of the saintly soldiers of the New Testament. Which of you (who rather sleep than lawfully sit in the chair of the priesthood), being cast out of the council of the wicked, hath after the stripes of sundry rods, like the holy apostles, from the bottom of his heart, given thanks to the blessed Trinity that he was found worthy to suffer disgrace for Christ's true deity? What one for the undoubted testimony of God, having his brains dashed out with the fuller's club, hath, like James the first, a bishop of the New Testament, suffered corporal death? Which of you, like James the brother of John, has by the unjust prince been beheaded? Who, like the first deacon and martyr of the gospel, (having but this only accusation, that he saw God, whom the wicked could not behold,) has by ungodly hands been stoned to death? What one of you, like the worthy keeper of the keys of the heavenly kingdom, has been nailed to the cross with his feet upward, in reverence for Christ, whom, no less in his death than in his life, he endeavoured to honour, and hath so breathed his last? Which of you, for the confession of the true word of Christ, hath, like the vessel of election, and chosen teacher of the Gentiles, after suffering imprisonment and shipwreck, after the terrible scourges of whips, the continual dangers of seas, of thieves, of Gentiles, of Jews, and of false apostles, after

the labours of famine, fasting, and watching, after incessant care over all the churches, after his trouble for such as scandalized, after his infirmity for the weak, after his wonderful travels over almost the whole world in preaching the gospel of Christ, lost his head at last by the stroke of the descending sword?

§ 74. Which of you, like the holy martyr Ignatius, bishop of the city of Antioch, hath after his miraculous actions in Christ, for testimony of him been torn by the jaws of lions, as he was once at Rome? whose words (as he was led to his passion) when you shall hear (if ever your countenances were overcome with blushing), you will not only, in comparison of him, esteem yourselves no priests, but not so much even as the meanest Christians; for in the epistle which he sent to the church of Rome, he writeth thus: "From Syria even unto Rome, I fight with beasts, by land and sea, being bound and chained unto ten leopards, I mean the soldiers appointed for my custody, who for our benefit bestowed upon them become more cruel, but I am the better instructed by their wickedness, neither yet am I in this justified; oh, when shall those beasts come the workers of my salvation (which are for me prepared)? when shall they be let loose at me? when shall it be lawful for my carcase to enjoy them? whom I do most earnestly wish to be eagerly enraged against me, and truly I will incite them to devour me; moreover, I will humbly pray, lest perchance they should dread to touch my body (as in some others they have before done), yea also, if they hesitate, I will offer violence, I will force myself upon them. Pardon me (I beseech you), I know what is commodious for me, even now I begin to be the disciple of Christ; let all envy, whether of human affection or spiritual wickedness, cease, that I may endeavour to obtain Christ Jesus; let fires, let crosses, let cruelty of beasts, let breaking of bones, and rending of limbs, with all the pains of the whole body, and all the torments devised by

the art of the devil, be together poured out on me alone, so that I may merit to attain unto Christ Jesus." Why do you behold these things with the sleepy eyes of your souls? why do you hearken unto them with the deaf ears of your senses? Shake off (I beseech you) the dark and black mist of slothfulness from your hearts, that so you may see the glorious light of truth and humility. A Christian, and he not mean, but a perfect one, and a priest not base, but one of the highest, a martyr of no ordinary sort, but one of the chiefest, saith: "Now I begin to be the disciple of Christ." And you, like the same Lucifer, who was thrown down out of heaven, are puffed up with words, and not with power, and after a sort do chew under the tooth, and make pretence in your actions, as the author of this your wickedness hath thus expressed: "I will mount up into the heavens, and be like unto the highest." And again; "I have digged and drunk water, and dried up with the steps of my feet all the rivers of the banks." You would more rightly have imitated him and hearkened unto his words (who is without doubt the most true example of all goodness and humility), saying by his prophet, "I am verily a worm and not a man, the reproach of men, and the outcast of the people." Oh unspeakable matter! that he called himself "the reproach of men," when he washed away the reproaches of the whole world. And again in the gospel; "I am not able to do any thing of myself," when at the same time he was co-eternal with the Father, co-equal with the Holy Ghost, and consubstantial with both, and created, not by the help of another, but by his own Almighty power, the heaven and earth, with all their inestimable ornaments; and ye nevertheless have arrogantly lifted up your voices, notwithstanding the prophet saith, "Why do earth and ashes swell with pride?"

§ 75. But let us return unto our subject. Which of you (I say), like Polycarp, the famous bishop of the

church of Smyrna, that witness of Christ, hath courteously entertained as guests at his table, those who violently drew him out to be burned, and when for the charity which he did bear unto Christ, he was brought to the stake, said, "He who gave me grace to endure the torment of the fire, will likewise grant me without fastening of nails to bear the flames with patience." And now passing over in this my discourse the mighty armies of saints, I will yet touch on one only, for example's sake, Basil, the bishop of Cæsaria, who when he was thus by the unrighteous prince threatened, that (unless he would on the next day be as the rest, defiled in the dirty dunghill of the Arian heresy) he should be put to death, answered (as it is reported), "I will be to-morrow the same as to-day, and for thee, I do not wish thee to change thy determination." And again, "Would that I had some worthy reward to bestow on him that would speedily discharge Basil from the bands of this breathing bellows." Which one of you doth endeavour to daunt the menaces of tyrants, by inviolably keeping the rule of the apostolical speech, which in all times and ages hath been observed by all holy priests, to suppress the suggestion of men, when they sought to draw them into wickedness, saying in this manner; "It behoveth us to obey God rather than men."

§ 76. Wherefore after our accustomed manner, taking refuge in the mercy of our Lord, and in the sentences of his holy prophets, that they on our behalf may now level the darts of their oracles at imperfect pastors (as before at tyrants), so that thereby they may receive compunction, and be amended, let us see what manner of threats our Lord doth by his prophets utter against slothful and dishonest priests, and such as do not, both by examples and words, rightly instruct the people. For even Eli, the priest in Shilo, because he did not severely proceed (with a zeal worthy of God) in punishing his sons, when they contemned our Lord, but (as a man

overswayed with a fatherly affection) too mildly and remissly admonished them, was sentenced with this judgment by the prophet speaking unto him: "Thus saith our Lord; I have manifestly shewed myself unto the house of thy father, when they were the servants of Pharaoh in Egypt, and have chosen the house of thy father out of all the tribes of Israel, for a priesthood unto me." And a little after; "Why hast thou looked upon mine incense, and upon my sacrifice, with a dishonest eye? and hast honoured thy children more than me, that thou mightest bless them from the beginning in all sacrifices in my presence? And now so saith our Lord: Because whoso honoureth me I will honour him again: and whoso maketh no account of me shall be brought to nothing. Behold the days shall come, and I will destroy thy name, and the seed of thy father's house. And let this be to thee the sign, which shall fall upon thy two sons Hophni and Phineas, in one day shall they both die by the sword of men." If thus therefore they shall suffer, who correct them that are under their charge, with words only, and not with condign punishment, what shall become of those who by offending exhort you, and draw others unto wickedness?

§ 77. It is apparent also what befel unto the true prophet, who was sent from Judah to prophesy in Bethel, and forbidden to taste any meat in that place, after the sign which he foretold, was fulfilled, and after he had restored to the wicked king his withered hand again, being deceived by another prophet (as he was termed), and so made to take but a little bread and water, his host speaking in this sort unto him: "Thus saith our Lord God: Because thou hast been disobedient to the mouth of our Lord, and hast not observed the precept which the Lord thy God hath commanded, and hast returned, and eaten bread and drunk water in this place, in which I have charged thee that thou shouldest neither eat bread nor drink water, thy body shall not be

buried in the sepulchre of thy forefathers. And so, (saith the Scripture) it came to pass, that after he had eaten bread and drunk water, he made ready his ass, and departed, and a lion found him in the way and slew him."

§ 78. Hear ye also the holy prophet Esaias, how he speaketh of priests on this wise. "Woe be to the ungodly, may evil befall him; for the reward of his hands shall light upon him. Her own exactors have spoiled my people, and women have borne sway over her. O my people, they who term thee blessed, themselves deceive thee, and destroy the way of thy footsteps. Our Lord standeth to judge, and standeth to judge the people. Our Lord will come unto judgment with the elders of the people and her princes. Ye have consumed my vine, the spoil of the poor is in your house. Why do ye break in pieces my people, and grind the faces of the poor? saith our Lord of Hosts." And also; "Woe be unto them who compose ungodly laws, and in their writing have written injustice, that they may oppress the poor in judgment, and work violence to the cause of the lowly of my people, that widows may be their prey, and they make spoil of the orphans; what will ye do in the day of visitation and calamity approaching from afar off?" And afterwards; "But these also in regard of wine have been ignorant, and in respect of drunkenness have wandered astray; the priests have not understood, because of drunkenness, and have been swallowed up in wine, they have erred in drunkenness, they have not known him who seeth, they have been ignorant of judgment. For all tables are filled with the vomit of their uncleanness, in so much as there is not any free place to be found."

§ 79. "Hear therefore the word of our Lord, O ye deceivers, who bear authority over my people that is in Jerusalem. For ye have said, we have entered into a truce with death, and with hell we have made a cove-

nant. The overflowing scourge when it shall pass forth shall not fall upon us, because we have placed falsehood for our hope, and by lying we have been defended." And somewhat after; "And hail shall overthrow the hope of lying, together with the defence. Waters shall overflow, and your truce with death shall be destroyed, and your covenant with hell shall not continue, when the overflowing scourge shall pass forth; ye shall also be trodden under foot, whensoever it shall pass along through you, it shall sweep you away withal." And again; "And our Lord hath said: Because this people approacheth with their mouth, and with their lips glorify me, but their heart is far from me, behold therefore I will cause this people to wonder by a great and stupendous miracle. For wisdom shall decay and fall away from her wise men, and the understanding of her sages shall be concealed. Woe be unto you that are profound in heart, to conceal counsel from our Lord, whose works are in darkness, and they say who seeth us! And who hath known us? for this thought of yours is perverse." And afterwards; "Thus saith our Lord: Heaven is my seat, and the earth my footstool. What is this house that ye will erect unto me, and what place shall be found for my resting-place? all these things hath my hand made, and these universally have been all created, saith our Lord. On whom truly shall I cast mine eye, but on the humble poor man, and the contrite in spirit, and him that dreadeth my speeches? he that sacrificeth an ox, is as he that killeth a man; he that slaughtereth a beast for sacrifice, is like him who beateth out the brains of a dog; he that offereth an oblation, is as he that offereth the blood of a hog; he that is mindful of frankincense, is as he that honoureth an idol: of all these things have they made choice in their ways, and in their abominations hath their soul been delighted."

§ 80. Hear also what Jeremy, that virgin prophet, speaketh unto the unwise pastors in this sort: "Thus

saith our Lord : What iniquity have your fathers found in me, because they have removed themselves far off from me, and walked after vanity, and are become vain ?” And again ; “ And entering in, ye have defiled my land, and made mine inheritance abomination. The priests have not said, Where is our Lord ? and the rulers of the law have not known me, and the pastors have dealt treacherously against me. Wherefore I will as yet contend in judgment with you, saith our Lord, and debate the matter with your children.” And a little afterwards ; “ Astonishment and wonders have been wrought in the land. Prophets did preach lying, and priests did applaud with their hands, and my people have loved such matters. What therefore shall be done in her last and final ends ? To whom shall I speak and make protestation that he may hear me ? behold their ears are uncircumcised, and they cannot hear. Behold the word of our Lord is uttered unto them for their reproach, and they receive it not : because I will stretch out my hand upon the inhabitants of the earth, saith our Lord. For why, from the lesser even unto the greater, all study avarice, and from the prophet even unto the priest, all work deceit, and they cured the contrition of the daughter of my people, with ignominy, saying, Peace, peace, and peace there shall not be. Confounded they are, who have wrought abomination : but they are not with confusion confounded, and have not understood how to be ashamed. Wherefore they shall fall among those who are falling, in the time of their visitation shall they rush headlong down together, saith our Lord.” And again ; “ All these princes of the declining sort, walking fraudulently, being brass and iron, are universally corrupted, the blowing bellows have failed in the fire, the finer of metals in vain hath melted, their malicious acts are not consumed, call them refuse and reprobate silver, because our Lord hath thrown them away.” And after a few words, “ I am, I am, I have seen, saith our Lord. Go

your ways to my place in Shilo, where my name hath inhabited from the beginning, and behold what I have done thereunto for the malice of my people Israel. And now because ye have wrought all these works, saith our Lord, and I have spoken unto you, arising in the morning, and talking, and yet ye have not heard me, and I have called you, and yet ye have not answered, I will so deal towards this house, wherein my name is now called upon, and wherein ye have confidence, and to this place which I have given unto you, and to your fathers, as I have done to Shilo, and I will cast you away from my countenance.”

§ 81. And again ; “ My children have departed from me, and have no abiding, and there is none who any more pitcheth my tent, and advanceth my pavilion : for the pastors have dealt fondly and not sought out our Lord. Wherefore they have not understood, and their flock hath been dispersed.” And a little after ; “ What is the matter that my beloved hath in my houses committed many offences ? shall the holy flesh take away thy maliciousness from thee, wherein thou hast gloried ? our Lord shall call thy name a plentiful, fair, fruitful, goodly olive ; at the sound of the speech a mighty fire hath been inflamed in her, and her orchards have been quite consumed therewith.” And again ; “ Come ye to me, and be ye gathered together, all ye beasts of the earth, make haste to devour. Many pastors have thrown down my vine, they have trampled my part under foot, they have given over my portion which was well worthy to be desired, into a desert of solitariness.” And again he speaketh : “ Thus saith our Lord unto this people, which have loved to move their feet, and not rested, nor yet pleased our Lord ; now shall he remember their iniquities and visit their offences. Prophets say unto them, Ye shall not see the sword, and there shall be no famine among you, but our Lord shall give true peace unto you in this place. And our Lord hath

said unto me, The prophets do falsely foretell in my name; I have not sent them, nor laid my commandment on them; they prophesy unto you a lying vision, and divination together with deceitfulness, and the seducement of their own hearts. And therefore thus saith our Lord: In sword and famine shall those prophets be consumed; and the people to whom they have prophesied shall by means of the famine and sword be cast out into the streets of Jerusalem, and there shall be none to bury them."

§ 82. And moreover; "Woe be to the pastors who destroy and rend in pieces the flock of my pasture, saith our Lord. Thus therefore saith our Lord God of Israel unto the pastors who guide my people, ye have dispersed my flock, and cast them forth, and not visited them: Behold, I will visit upon you the malice of your endeavours, saith our Lord. For the prophet and the priest are both defiled, and in my house have I found their evil, saith our Lord, and therefore shall their way be as a slippery place in the dark, for they shall be thrust forward, and fall down together therein, for I will bring evils upon them, the year of their visitation, saith our Lord. And in the prophets of Samaria, I have seen foolishness, and they did prophesy in Baal, and deceived my people of Israel, and in the prophets of Jerusalem, have I seen the like resemblance, adultery, and the way of lying, and they have comforted the hands of the vilest offenders, that every man may not be converted from his malice: they have been all made to me as Sodom, and the inhabitants thereof as those of Gomorrha. Thus therefore saith our Lord to the prophets: Behold, I will give them wormwood for their food, and gall for their drink. For there hath passed from the prophet of Jerusalem pollution over the whole earth. Thus saith our Lord of Hosts: listen not to the words of prophets, who prophesy unto you, and deceive you, for they speak the vision of their own heart, and not from the mouth of

our Lord. For they say unto these who blaspheme me, ‘ Our Lord hath spoken, peace shall be unto you,’ and to all that walk in the wickedness of their own hearts, they have said, evil shall not fall upon them. For who was present in the counsel of our Lord, and hath seen and heard his speech, who hath considered of his word, and hearkened thereunto? Behold, the whirlwind of the indignation of our Lord passeth out, and a tempest breaking forth, shall fall upon the heads of the wicked; the fury of our Lord shall not return, until the time that he worketh and until he fulfilleth the cogitation of his heart. In the last days of all shall ye understand his counsel.”

§ 83. And little also do ye conceive and put in execution that which the holy prophet Joel hath likewise spoken in admonishment of slothful priests, and lamentation of the people’s suffering for their iniquities, saying: “ Awake ye who are drunk, from your wine, and weep and bewail ye all, who have drunk wine even to drunkenness, because joy and delight are taken away from your mouths. Mourn ye priests, who serve the altar, because the fields have been made miserable. Let the earth mourn, because corn hath become miserable, and wine been dried up, oil diminished, and husbandmen withered away. Lament ye possessions, in regard of wheat and barley, because the vintage hath perished out of the field, the vine withered up, the figs diminished: the pomegranates, and palm, and apple, and all trees of the field are withered away, in respect that the children of men have confounded their joy.” All which things are spiritually to be understood by you, that your souls may not wither away with so pestilent a famine, for want of the word of God. And again; “ Weep out ye priests, who serve our Lord, saying, ‘ Spare, O Lord, thy people, and give not over thine inheritance unto reproach, and let not nations hold dominion over them, that Gentiles may not say, Where is their God?’ ” And

yet ye yield not your ears unto these sayings, but admit of all matters by which the indignation of God's fury is more vehemently inflamed.

§ 84. With diligence also attend ye what holy Hosea the prophet hath spoken unto priests of your behaviour. "Hear these words (O ye priests), and let the house of Israel, together with the king's house, mark them, fasten ye them in your ears, for unto you pertaineth judgment, because ye are made an entangling snare to the espying watch, and as a net stretched over the toils which the followers of hunting have framed."

§ 85. To you also, may this kind of alienation from our Lord be meant by the prophet Amos saying, "I have hated and rejected your festival days, and I will not receive the savour in your solemn assemblies, because albeit ye offer your burnt sacrifices and hosts, I will not accept them, and I will not cast mine eye on the vows of your declaration. Take away from me the sound of your songs, and the psalm of your organs I will not hear." For the famine of the evangelical meat consuming, in your abundance of victuals, the very bowels of your souls, rageth violently within you, according as the aforesaid prophet hath foretold, saying, "Behold the days shall come, saith our Lord, and I will send out a famine upon the earth; not the famine of bread, nor the thirst of water, but a famine in hearing the word of God, and the waters shall be moved from sea to sea, and they shall run over from the north even unto the east, seeking the word of our Lord, and shall not find it."

§ 86. Let holy Micah also pierce your ears, who like a heavenly trumpet soundeth loudly forth against the deceitful princes of the people, saying, "Hearken now, ye princes of the house of Jacob, is it not for you to know judgment, who hate goodness, and seek after mischief, who pluck their skins from off men, and their flesh from their bones? Even as they have eaten the flesh of my people, and flayed their skins from them, broken

their bones to pieces, and hewed them small as meat to the pot, they shall cry to God, and he will not hear them, and in that season turn his face away from them, even as they before have wickedly behaved themselves in their inventions. Thus speaketh our Lord of the prophets who seduce my people, who bite with their teeth, and preach against them peace, and if a man giveth nothing to stop their mouths, they raise and sanctify a war upon him. Night shall therefore be unto you in place of a vision, and darkness unto you in lieu of divination, and the sun shall set upon your prophets, and the day shall wax dark upon them, and seeing dreams they shall be confounded, and the diviners shall be derided, and they shall speak ill against all men, because there shall not be any one that will hear them, but that I myself shall do mine uttermost and strongest endeavour in the spirit of our Lord, in judgment and in power, that I may declare unto the house of Jacob their impieties, and to Israel their offences. Hearken therefore unto these words, ye captains of the house of Jacob, and ye remnants of the house of Israel, who abhor judgment, and overthrow all righteousness, who build up Sion in blood, and Jerusalem in iniquities : her rulers did judge for rewards, and her priests answered for hire, and her prophets did for money divine, and rested on our Lord, saying, And is not the Lord among us ? evils shall not fall upon us. For your cause therefore shall Sion be ploughed up as a field, and Jerusalem as the watchhouse of a garden, and the mountain of the house as the place of a woody wilderness." And after some words ensuing, " Woe is me for that I am become as he that gathereth stubble in the harvest, and a cluster of grapes in the vintage, when the principal branch is not left to be eaten. Woe is me, that a soul hath perished through earthly actions, the reverence of sinners ariseth even with reverence from the earth, and he appeareth not that shall use correction among men. All contend in

judgment for blood, and every one with tribulation afflicteth his neighbour, for mischief he prepareth his hands.

§ 87. Listen ye likewise how the famous prophet Zephaniah debated also in times past, concerning your revellers (for he spake of Jerusalem, which is spiritually to be understood the church or the soul), saying, “O the city that was beautiful and set at liberty, the confiding dove hath not hearkened to the voice, nor yet entertained discipline, she hath not trusted in our Lord, and to her God she hath not approached.” And he showeth the reason why, “Her princes have been like unto roaring lions, her judges as wolves of Arabia did not leave towards the morning, her prophets carrying the spirit of a contemptuous despising man; her priests did profane what was holy, and dealt wickedly in the law, but our Lord is upright in the midst of his people, and in the morning he will not do injustice, in the morning will he give his judgment.”

§ 88. But hear ye also blessed Zachary the prophet, in the word of God, admonishing you: “For thus saith our Almighty Lord, Judge ye righteous judgment, and work ye every one towards his brother mercy and pity, and hurt ye not through your power the widow, or orphan, or stranger, or poor man, and let not any man remember in his heart the malice of his brother; and they have been stubborn not to observe these, and have yielded their backs to foolishness, and made heavy their ears that they might not hearken, and framed their hearts not to be persuaded that they might not listen to my law and words, which our Almighty Lord hath sent in his spirit, through the hands of his former prophets, and mighty wrath hath been raised by our Almighty Lord.” And again; “Because they who have spoken, have spoken molestations, and diviners have uttered false visions and deceitful dreams, and given vain consolations; in respect hereof they are made as

dry as sheep, and are afflicted because no health was to be found; my wrath is heaped upon the shepherds, and upon the lambs will I visit." And within a few words after; "The voice of lamenting pastors, because their greatness is become miserable. The voice of roaring lions, because the fall of Jordan is become miserable: thus saith our Almighty Lord: They who possessed have murdered, and yet hath it not repented them, and they who sold them, have said; Our Lord is blessed and we have been enriched, and their pastors have suffered nothing concerning them. For which I will now bear no sparing hand over the inhabitants of the earth, saith our Lord."

§ 89. Hear ye moreover what the holy prophet Malachy denounceth unto you, saying, "Ye priests who despise my name, and have said: Wherein do we despise thy name? in offering on mine altar polluted bread: and ye have said, Wherein have we polluted it? In that ye have said: The table of our Lord is as nothing, and have despised such things as have been placed thereon; because if ye bring what is blind for an offering, is it not evil? If ye set and apply what is lame or languishing, is it not evil? Offer therefore the same unto thy governor, if he will receive it, if he will accept of thy person, saith our Almighty Lord. And now do ye humbly pray before the countenance of your God, and earnestly beseech him (for in your hands have these things been committed) if happily he will accept of your persons." And again; "And out of your ravenous theft ye have brought in the lame and languishing, and brought it in as an offering. Shall I receive the same at your hands, saith our Lord? Accursed is the deceitful man who hath in his flock one of the male kind, and yet making his vow offereth the feeble unto our Lord, because I am a mighty king, saith our Lord of Hosts, and my name is terrible among the Gentiles. And now unto you appertaineth this commandment, O ye priests, if ye will not

hear, and resolve in your hearts to yield glory unto my name, saith our Lord of Hosts, I will send upon you poverty, and accurse your blessings, because ye have not settled these things on your hearts. Behold I will stretch out my arm over ye, and disperse upon your countenances the dung of your solemnities." But that ye may in the mean time, with more zeal prepare your organs and instruments of mischief, to be converted into goodness, hearken ye (if there remain ever so little disposition to listen in your hearts) what he speaketh of a holy priest, saying, "My covenant of life and peace was with him (for historically he did speak of Levi and Moses), I gave fear unto him, and he was timorous of me, he dreaded before the countenance of my name, the law of truth was in his mouth, and iniquity was not found in his lips, he walked with me in peace and equity, and turned many away from unrighteousness. For the lips of the priest shall keep knowledge, and from out of his mouth they shall require the law, because he is the angel of our Lord of Hosts." And now again he changeth his style, and ceaseth not to rebuke and reprove the unrighteous, saying, "Ye have departed from the way, and scandalized many in the law, and made void my covenant with Levi, saith our Lord of Hosts. In regard whereof I have also given you over as contemptible and abject among my people, according as ye have not observed my ways, and accepted countenance of men in the law. What, is there not one father of us all? What, hath not one God created us? Why therefore doth every one despise his brother?" And again, "Behold our Lord of Hosts will come, and who can conceive the day of his coming, and who shall endure to stand to behold him? For he shall pass forth as a burning fire, and as the fuller's herb, and shall sit melting and trying silver, and he shall purge the sons of Levi, and cleanse them as gold and as silver." And somewhat afterwards; "Your words have grown strong

against me, saith our Lord, and ye have spoken thus. He is vain who serveth God, and what profit because we have kept his commandments, and walked sorrowfully before our Lord of Hosts. We shall therefore now call the arrogant blessed, for because they are erected and builded up, while they work iniquity, they have tempted God, and are made safe."

§ 90. But hear ye also what Ezechiel the prophet hath spoken, saying, "Woe upon woe shall come, and messenger upon messenger shall be, and the vision shall be sought for of the prophet, and the law shall perish from the priests, and counsel from the elders." And again; "Thus saith our Lord: In respect that your speeches are lying, and your divinations vain. For this cause, behold, I will come unto you, saith our Lord; I will stretch out my hand on your prophets, who see lies, and them who speak vain things, in the discipline of my people they shall not be, and in the Scripture, of the house of Israel, they shall not be written, and into the land of Israel they shall not enter, and ye shall know that I am the Lord, because they have seduced my people, saying, The peace of our Lord, and there is not the peace of our Lord. Here have they built the wall; and they anointed it, and it shall fall." And within some words afterwards; "Woe be unto these who fashion pillows, apt for every elbow of the hand, and make veils upon every head of all ages to the subversion of souls, and the souls of my people are subverted, and they possess their souls, and contaminated me unto my people for a handful of barley, and a piece of bread to the slaughter of the souls, whom it behoved not to die, and to the delivery of the souls, that were not fit to live, while ye talk unto my people that listeneth after vain speeches." And afterwards; "Say, thou son of man, thou art earth which is not watered with rain, neither yet hath rain fallen upon thee in the day of wrath, in which thy princes were in the midst of thee as

roaring lions, ravening on their prey, devouring souls in their potent might, and receiving rewards, and thy widows were multiplied in the midst of thee, and her priests have despised my law, and defiled my holy things. Between holy and polluted, they did not distinguish, and divided not equally between the unclean and clean, and from my Sabbaths they veiled their eyes, and in the midst of them they defiled.”

§ 91. And again ; “ And I sought among them a man of upright conversation, and one who should altogether stand before my face, to prevent the times that might fall upon the earth, that I should not in the end utterly destroy it, and I found him not. And I poured out upon it, the whole design of my mind, in the fire of my wrath for the consuming of them : I repaid their ways on their heads, saith our Lord.” And somewhat after ; “ And the word of our Lord was spoken unto me, saying : O son of man, speak to the children of my people, and thou shalt say unto them : The land whereupon I shall bring my sword, and the people of the land shall take some one man among them, and ordain him to be a watchman over them, and he shall espy the sword coming upon the land, and sound with his trumpet, and signify unto the people, whoso truly shall then hear the sound of the trumpet, and yet hearing shall not beware : and the sword shall come and catch him, his blood shall light upon his own head, because when he heard the sound of the trumpet, he was not watchful, his blood shall be upon him, and this man, for that he hath preserved his own soul, hath delivered himself. But the watchman if he shall see the sword coming, and not give notice with his trumpet, and the people shall not beware, and the sword coming shall take away a soul from among them, both the soul itself is caught a captive for her iniquities, and I will also require her blood at the hand of the watchman. And thou, O son of man, I have appointed thee a watchman over the house of

Israel, and if thou shalt hear the word from out of my mouth, when I shall say to a sinner, Thou shalt die the death, and yet wilt not speak whereby the wicked may return from his way: both the unjust himself shall die in his iniquity, and truly I will require his blood also at thy hands. But if thou shalt forewarn the wicked of his way, that he may avoid the same, and he nevertheless will not withdraw himself from his course, this man shall die in his impiety, and thou hast preserved thine own soul.”

§ 92. And so let these few among a multitude of prophetic testimonies suffice, by which the pride or sloth of our stubborn priests may be repelled, to the end they may not suppose that we act rather of our own invention, but by the authority of the laws, and saints, denounce such threats against them. And now let us also behold what the trumpet of the Gospel, sounding to the whole world, speaketh likewise to disordered priests; for as we have often said, this our discourse tendeth not to treat of them, who obtain lawfully the apostolical seat, and such as rightly and skilfully understand how to dispose of their spiritual food (in time convenient) unto their fellow-servants (if yet at this time there remain any great number of these in this our country); but we only talk of ignorant and unexpert shepherds, who leave their flock, and feed on vain matters, and have not the words of a learned pastor. And therefore it is an evident token that he is not a lawful pastor, yea not an ordinary Christian, who rejecteth and denieth these sayings, which are not so much ours (who of ourselves are very little worth), as the decrees of the Old and New Testament, even as one of ours right well doth say, “ We do exceedingly desire that the enemies of the church should also, without any manner of truce, be our adversaries: and that the friends and defenders thereof should not only be accounted our confederates, but also our fathers and governors.” For let every one with true examination, call his own conscience unto account, and so shall

he easily find, whether according to true reason he possesseth his priestly chair or no. Let us see (I say) what the Saviour and Creator of the world hath spoken. “Ye are (saith he) the salt of the earth; if that the salt vanisheth away, wherein shall it be salted? it prevaileth to no purpose any farther, but that it be cast out of the doors, and trampled under the feet of men.”

§ 93. This only testimony might abundantly suffice to confute all such as are impudent; but that it may be yet, by the words of Christ, more evidently proved with what intolerable bonds of crimes these false priests entangle and oppress themselves, some other sayings are also to be adjoined; for it followeth: “Ye are the light of the world. A city placed on a mountain cannot be hid, neither do they light a candle, and put it under a bushel, but upon a candlestick, that it may shine unto all who are in the house.” What priest therefore of this fashion and time, who is so possessed with the blindness of ignorance, doth as the light of a most bright candle, shine with the lamp of learning and good works, in any house, to all that sit in the darksome night? What one is so accounted a safe public and conspicuous refuge, to all the children universally of the church, that he may be to his countrymen a defensible and strong city, situated on the top of a high mountain? Moreover, which one of them can accomplish one day together, that which followeth: “Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father who is in Heaven:” since rather a certain most obscure cloud of theirs, and the black night of offences, hang over the whole island, in such a manner, that they all turn almost away from the righteous course, and make them to wander astray through unpassable and cumbersome paths of wickedness, and so their heavenly Father is not only by their works not magnified, but also by the same intolerably blasphemed. These testimonies of Holy Scripture, which are either already

cited, or hereafter to be intermixed in this Epistle, I would gladly wish to interpret in some historical or moral sense (as far as my meanness would allow).

§ 94. But for fear lest this our little work should be immeasurably tedious unto those who despise, loathe, and disdain, not so much our speeches as God's sayings, I have already alleged and mean hereafter to affirm these sentences plainly without any circumstance. And to proceed, within a few words after: "For whoever shall break one of the least of these commandments, and so instruct men, shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven." And again; "Judge ye not that ye may not be adjudged; for in what judgment ye shall judge, ye shall be judged." And which one (I pray you) of your company will regard this same that followeth: "But why dost thou see (saith he) the mote in thy brother's eye, and considerest not the beam in thine own eye? or how dost thou say to thy brother, Suffer me to cast the mote out of thine eye, and behold the beam remaineth still in thine own eye?" Or this which follows: "Do not give what is holy to dogs, neither yet shall ye cast your pearls before swine, lest perchance they tread them under their feet, and turn again and rend you," which hath often befallen you. And admonishing the people, that they should not by deceitful doctors (such as ye) be seduced, he saith: "Keep yourselves carefully from false prophets, who come unto you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly are ravenous wolves: by their fruit shall ye know them. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles? So every good tree beareth good fruit, and the evil, evil fruit." And somewhat afterward; "Not every one who saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven, but whoso doeth the will of my Father that is in heaven, he shall enter into the kingdom of heaven."

§ 95. And what shall then become of you, who (as the prophet hath said) believe God only with your lips,

and do not adhere to him with your hearts. And how do ye fulfil that which followeth ; “ Behold I send you forth as sheep in the midst of wolves.” Whereas you act quite contrariwise, and proceed as wolves against a flock of sheep : or the other following sentence ; “ Be ye wise as serpents and simple as doves,” since ye are only wise to bite others, with your deadly mouths, and not, with the interposition of your whole body, to defend your head, which is Christ, whom with all the endeavours of your evil actions you tread under foot ; neither yet have ye the simplicity of doves, but the resemblance rather of the black crow, which taking her flight out of the ark, that is the church of God, and finding the carrion of earthly pleasures, did never with a pure heart return back thither again. But let us look on the rest. “ Fear not (saith he) them who kill the body, but are not able to slay the soul, but fear him, who can overthrow both soul and body in hell.” Revolve in your minds which of these ye have performed ? And what one of you is not wounded in the very secrets of his heart, by this testimony following, which our Saviour uttereth unto his apostles, of evil prelates, saying, “ Do ye suffer them, the blind leaders of the blind, but if the blind be a guide to the blind, both shall fall into the ditch ?” But the people doubtless whom ye have governed, or rather beguiled, have just occasion to listen hereunto.

§ 96. Mark ye also the words of our Lord speaking unto his apostles and to the people, which words likewise (as I hear) ye yourselves are not ashamed to pronounce often in public : “ Upon the chair of Moses have the scribes and pharisees sate, observe ye therefore and accomplish, all that they shall speak unto you ; but do not according to their works. For they only speak, but of themselves do nothing.” It is truly to priests a dangerous and superfluous doctrine, which is overclouded with sinful actions. “ Woe be unto you, hypocrites,

who shut up the kingdom of heaven before men, and neither yourselves enter in, nor yet suffer those that would to enter in." For ye shall with horrible pains be tormented, not only in respect of your great offences, which ye heap up for punishment in the world to come, but also in regard of those who daily perish through your bad example, whose blood in the day of judgment shall be required at your hands.

Yield ye also diligent attention unto the misery, which the parable setteth before your eyes that is spoken of the servant, who saith, in his heart, " My Lord delayeth his coming," and upon this occasion, perchance, " hath begun to strike his fellow servants, eating and drinking with drunkards. The Lord of the same servant therefore (saith he) will come on a day when he doth not expect him, and in an hour whereof he is ignorant, and will divide him (away from his holy priests), and will place his portion with the hypocrites (that is, with them who under the pretence of priesthood do conceal much iniquity), affirming that there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth ;" such as they have not experienced in this present life, either for the daily ruin of the children of our holy mother church, or for the desire of the kingdom of heaven.

§ 97. But let us see what Paul, the true scholar of Christ, and master of the Gentiles, who is a mirror for every ecclesiastical doctor, " Even as I am the disciple of Christ," speaketh about a work of such importance in his first Epistle on this wise : " Because when they have known God, they have not magnified him as God, or given thanks unto him ; but vanished in their own cogitations, and their foolish heart is blinded ; affirming themselves to be wise, they are made fools." Although this seemeth to be spoken unto the Gentiles ; look into it notwithstanding, because it may conveniently be applied to the priests and people of this age. And after a few words ; " Who have changed (saith he) the truth

of God into lying, and have revered and served the creature rather than the Creator who is blessed for ever: therefore hath God given them over unto the passions of ignominy." And again; "And even as they have not approved themselves to have God in their knowledge, so God hath yielded them up to a reprobate sense, that they may do such things as are not convenient, being replenished with all iniquity, malice, uncleanness of life, fornication, covetousness, naughtiness, full of envy, murder (*i. e.* of the souls of the people), contention, deceit, wickedness, backbiters, detractors, hateful to God, spiteful, proud, puffed up, devisers of mischief, disobedient to their parents, senseless, disordered, without mercy, without affection, who, when they had known the justice of God, understood not that they who commit such things, are worthy of death."

§ 98. And now what one of the aforesaid sort hath indeed been void of all these? And if he were, yet perhaps he may be caught in the sense of the ensuing sentence, wherein he saith; "Not only those who do these things, but those also who consent unto them," for none of them truly are free from this wickedness. And afterwards; "But thou, according to thy hardness and impenitent heart, dost lay up for thyself wrath, against the day of wrath, and revelation of the just judgment of God, who will yield unto every one according unto his works." And again; "For there is no acceptation of persons with God. For whosoever have offended without the law, shall also without the law perish: whosoever have offended in the law, shall by the law be judged. For the hearers of the law shall not with God be accounted just, but the doers of the law shall be justified." How severe a sentence shall they therefore sustain, who not only leave undone, what they ought to accomplish, and forbear not what they are forbidden, but also flee away from the very hearing of the word of God, as from a serpent, though lightly sounding in their ears.

§ 99. But let us pass over to that which followeth to this effect: "What shall we therefore say, shall we continue still in sin, that grace may abound? God forbid, for we who are dead to sin, how shall we again live in the same?" And somewhat afterwards; "Who shall separate us (saith he) from the love of Christ? tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or danger, or the sword?" What one (I pray you) of all you, shall with such an affection be possessed in the inward secret of his heart, since ye do not only labour for achieving of piety, but also endure many things for the working of impiety, and offending of Christ? Or who hath respected this that followeth: "The night hath passed, and the day approached. Let us therefore cast off the works of darkness, and put on the armour of light, even as in the day, let us honestly walk, not in banquetting, and drunkenness, not in couches, and wantonness, not in contention, and emulation, but put ye on our Lord Jesus Christ, and make no care to bestow your flesh in concupiscences."

§ 100. And again, in the first Epistle to the Corinthians, he saith: "As a wise workmaster have I laid the foundation, another buildeth thereupon, but let every man consider how he buildeth thereon. For no man can lay any other foundation besides that which is laid, even Christ Jesus. But if any man buildeth upon this, gold, and silver, precious stones, hay, wood, stubble, every one's work shall be manifest; for the day of our Lord shall declare the same, because it shall be revealed in fire, and the fire shall prove what every man's work is. If any man's work shall remain, all by the fire shall be adjudged. Whoso shall build thereupon, shall receive reward. If any man's work shall burn, he shall suffer detriment. Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and that the spirit of God dwelleth in you? but if any man violate the temple of God, God will destroy him." And again; "If any man seemeth

to be wise among you in this world, let him be made a fool that he may become wise. For the wisdom of this world, is foolishness with God." And within a few words afterwards: "Your glorying is not good. Know ye not, that a little leaven corrupteth the whole mass? Purge ye therefore the old leaven, that ye may be a new sprinkling." How shall the old leaven (which is sin) be purged away, that from day to day with your uttermost endeavours is increased. And yet again: "I have written unto you in mine Epistle, that ye be not intermingled with fornicators, not truly the fornicators of this world, or the avaricious, ravenous, or idolatrous, otherwise ye ought to depart out of this world. But now have I written unto you, that ye be not intermingled, if any one is named a brother, and be a fornicator, or avaricious, or an idolator, or a slanderer, or a drunkard, or ravenous, with such an one, ye should not so much as eat." But a felon condemneth not his fellow thief for stealing, or other open robbery, whom he rather liketh, defendeth, and loveth, as a companion of his offence.

§ 101. Also in his second Epistle unto the Corinthians; "Having therefore (saith he) this administration, according as we have obtained mercy, let us not fail, but let us cast away the secrets of shame, not walking in subtilty, nor yet corrupting the word of God," (that is by evil example and flattery). And in that which followeth, he thus discourseth of wicked teachers, saying: "For such false apostles are deceitful workmen, transfiguring themselves into the apostles of Christ. And no wonder. For Satan himself transfigureth himself into an angel of light. It is not much therefore if his ministers are transfigured as ministers of justice, whose end will be according unto their works."

§ 102. Hear likewise what he speaketh unto the Ephesians; and consider if ye find not your consciences attainted as culpable of this that followeth? where he

denounceth thus: "I say and testify this in our Lord, that ye do not as now walk like the Gentiles in the vanity of their own sense, having their understanding obscured with darkness, alienated from the way of God, through ignorance, which remaineth in them in regard of the blindness of their heart, who despairing, have yielded themselves over to uncleanness of life, for the working of all filthiness and avarice." And which of ye hath willingly fulfilled that which next ensueth? "Therefore be ye not made unwise, but understanding what is the will of God, and be ye not drunk with wine, wherein there is riotousness, but be ye fulfilled with the Holy Ghost."

§ 103. Or that which he saith to the Thessalonians. "For neither have we been with you at any time in the speech of flattery, as yourselves do know; neither upon occasion of avarice, neither seeking to be glorified by men, neither by you, nor any others, when we might be honoured, as other apostles of Christ. But we have been made as little ones in the midst of you, or even as the nurse cherisheth her small tender children, so desiring you, we would very gladly deliver unto you, not only the Gospel, but also our very lives." If in all things ye retained this affection of the apostle, then might ye be likewise assured, that ye lawfully possessed his chair. Or how have ye observed this that followeth: "Ye know (saith he) what precepts I have delivered unto you. This is the will of our Lord, your sanctification, that ye abstain from fornication, and that every one of you know how to possess his own vessel, in honour and sanctification, not in the passion of desire, like the Gentiles who are ignorant of God, and that none of you do encroach upon or circumvent his brother in his business, because our Lord is the revenger of all these. For God hath not called us into uncleanness; but unto sanctification. Therefore whoso despiseth these, doth not despise man, but God." What one also among you

hath advisedly and warily kept this that ensueth: “Mortify therefore your members which are upon the earth, fornication, uncleanness of life, lust, and evil concupiscence, for which the wrath of God hath come upon the children of diffidence?” Ye perceive therefore upon what offences the wrath of God doth chiefly arise.

§ 04. In which respect hear likewise what the same holy apostle, with a prophetic spirit, foretellet of you, and such as yourselves, writing plainly in this sort to Timothy: “For know you this, that in the last days there shall be dangerous times at hand. For men shall be self-lovers, covetous, puffed up, proud, blasphemous, disobedient to their parents, ungrateful, wicked, without affection, incontinent, unmeek, without benignity, betrayers, froward, lofty, rather lovers of sensual pleasures, than of God, having a show of piety, but renouncing the virtue thereof.” Avoid thou these men, even as the prophet saith; “I have hated the congregation of the malicious, and with the wicked I will not sit.” And a little after, he uttereth that (which in our age we behold to increase), saying: “Ever learning, and never attaining unto the knowledge of truth: for even as Jannes and Mambres resisted Moses, so do these also withstand the truth: men corrupted in mind, reprobate against faith, but they shall prosper no further; for their folly shall be manifest unto all, as theirs likewise was.”

§ 105. And evidently doth he also declare how priests in their office ought to behave themselves, writing thus to Titus: “Show thyself an example of good works, in learning, in integrity, in gravity, having thy word sound without offence, that he who standeth on the adverse part, may be afraid, having no evil to speak of us.” And moreover he saith unto Timothy; “Labour thou as a good soldier of Christ Jesus; no man fighting in God’s quarrel entangleth himself in worldly business, that he may please him unto whom he hath approved himself,

for whoso striveth in the lists for the mastery, receiveth not the crown, unless he hath lawfully contended." This is his exhortation to the good. Other matter also which the same Epistles contain, is a threatening advertisement to the wicked (such as yourselves, in the judgment of all understanding persons, appear to be). "If any one (saith he) teacheth otherwise, and doth not peaceably assent to the sound sayings of our Lord Jesus Christ, and that doctrine which is according to piety, he is proud, having no knowledge, but languishing about questions, and contentions of words, out of which do spring envies, debates, blasphemies, evil suspicions, conflicts of men corrupted in mind, who are deprived of truth, esteeming commodity to be piety."

§ 106. But why in using these testimonies, here and there dispersed, are we any longer (as it were) tossed up and down in the silly boat of our simple understanding, on the waves of sundry interpretations? We have now therefore at length thought it necessary to have recourse to those lessons, which are gathered out of Holy Scriptures, to the end that they should not only be rehearsed, but also be assenting and assisting unto the benediction, wherewith the hands of priests, and others of inferior sacred orders, are first consecrated, and that thereby they may continually be warned never, by degenerating from their priestly dignity, to digress from the commandments, which are faithfully contained in the same; so as it may be plain and apparent unto all, that everlasting torments are reserved for them, and that they are not priests, or the servants of God, who do not with their utmost power follow and fulfil these instructions and precepts. Wherefore let us hear what the prince of the apostles, Saint Peter, hath signified about this so weighty a matter, saying: "Blessed be God, and the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who through his mercy hath regenerated us into the hope of eternal life, by the resurrection of our Lord Jesus Christ

from the dead, into an inheritance which can never corrupt, never wither, neither be defiled, preserved in heaven for you, who are kept in the virtue of God ;” why then do ye fondly violate such an inheritance, which is not as an earthly one, transitory, but immortal and eternal? And somewhat afterwards ; “ For which cause be ye girded in the loins of your mind, sober, perfectly hoping in that grace which is offered to you in the revelation of Jesus Christ :” examine ye now the depths of your hearts, whether ye be sober and do perfectly preserve the grace of priesthood, which shall be duly discussed and decided in the revelation of our Lord. And again he saith : “ As children of the benediction, not configuring yourselves to those former desires of your ignorance, but according unto him who hath called you holy, be ye also holy in all conversation. For which cause it is written ; Be ye holy because I am holy.” Which one of you (I pray) hath with his whole mind so pursued sanctity, that he hath earnestly hastened, as much as in him lay, to fulfil the same? But let us behold what in the second lesson of the same apostle is contained ; “ My dearest, (saith he,) sanctify your souls for the obedience of faith through the spirit in charity, in brotherhood, loving one another out of a true heart perpetually, as born again not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, through the word of God, living and remaining for ever.”

§ 107. These are truly the commandments of the apostle ; and read in the day of your ordination, to the end ye should inviolably observe the same, but they are not fulfilled by you in discretion and judgment, nay not so much as duly considered or understood. And afterwards ; “ Laying therefore aside all malice, and all deceits, and dissemblings, envy, and detractions, as infants newly born, reasonable and without guile covet ye milk, that ye may thereby grow to salvation, because our Lord is sweet.” Consider ye also in your minds if these

sayings which have sounded in your deaf ears, have not often likewise been trodden by you under foot: and again; “Ye truly are the chosen lineage, the royal priesthood, the holy nation, the people for adoption, that ye may declare his virtues, who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light.” But truly by you are not only the virtues of God not declared and made more glorious, but also through your wicked examples are they (by such as have not perfect belief) despised. Ye have perchance at the same time likewise heard, what is read in the lesson of the Acts, on this wise; “Peter arising in the midst of the disciples said: Men and brethren, it is expedient that the Scripture be fulfilled, which the Holy Ghost hath by the mouth of David foretold of Judas.” And a little after; “This man therefore purchased a field, of the reward of iniquity.” This have ye heard with a careless or rather blockish heart, as though the reading thereof nothing at all appertained unto yourselves. What one of you (I pray you) doth not seek the field of the reward of iniquity? For Judas robbed and pillaged the purse, and ye spoil and waste the sacred gifts and treasures of the church, together with the souls of her children. He went to the Jews to make a market of God, ye pass to the tyrants, and their father the Devil, that ye may despise Christ. *He* set to sale the Saviour of the world for thirty-pence, and *you* do so even for one poor half-penny.

§ 108. What need many words? The example of Matthias is apparently laid before you for your confusion, who was chosen into his place, not by his own proper will, but by the election of the holy apostles, or rather the judgment of Christ, whereat ye being blinded, do not perceive how far ye run astray from his merits, while ye fall wilfully and headlong into the manners and affection of Judas the traitor. It is therefore manifest that he who wittingly from his heart termeth you

priests, is not himself a true and worthy Christian. And now I will assuredly speak what I think: this reprehension might have been framed after a milder fashion, but what availeth it to touch only with the hand, or dress with gentle ointment, that wound which with impostumation or stinking corruption is now grown so horrible, that it requireth the searing iron, or the ordinary help of the fire, if happily by any means it may be cured, the diseased in the meanwhile not seeking a medicine, and the physician much erring from a rightful remedy? O ye enemies of God, and not priests! O ye traders of wickedness, and not bishops! O ye betrayers and not successors of the holy apostles! O ye adversaries and not servants of Christ! Ye have certainly heard at the least, the sound of the words, which are in the second lesson taken out of the Apostle Saint Paul, although ye have no way observed the admonitions and virtue of them, but even as statues (that neither see nor hear) stood that day at the altar, while both then, and continually since he hath thundered in your ears, saying: "Brethren, it is a faithful speech, and worthy of all acceptance." He called it faithful and worthy, but ye have despised it, as unfaithful and unworthy. "If any man coveteth a bishopric, he desireth a good work." Ye do mightily covet a bishopric in respect of avarice, but not for spiritual convenience and for the good work which is suitable to the place, ye want it. "It behoveth therefore such an one, to be free from all cause of reprehension." At this saying we have more need to shed tears than utter words; for it is as much as if the apostle had said, he ought to be of all others most free from occasion of rebuke. "The husband of one wife," which is likewise so condemned among us, as if that word had never proceeded from him; "Sober, wise;" yea, which of ye hath once desired to have these virtues engrafted in him, "using hospitality." For this, if perchance it hath been found among ye, yet being

nevertheless rather done to purchase the favour of the people, than to accomplish the commandment, it is of no avail, our Lord and Saviour saying thus: "Verily, I say unto you, they have received their reward." Moreover, "A man adorned, not given to wine; no fighter, but modest; not contentious, not covetous:" O lamentable change! O horrible contempt of the heavenly commandments! And do ye not continually use the force of your words and actions, for the overthrowing or rather overwhelming of these, for whose defence and confirmation (if need had required) ye ought to have suffered pains, yea and to have lost your very lives.

§ 109. But let us see what followeth; "Well governing (saith he) his house, having his children subjected with all chastity." Imperfect therefore is the chastity of the parents, if the children be not also endued with the same. But how shall it be, where neither the father, nor the son, depraved by the example of his evil parent, is found to be chaste? "But if any one knoweth not how to rule over his own house, how shall he employ his care over the church of God?" These are the words, that with apparent effects, should be made good and approved: "Deacons in like manner, that they should be chaste, not double tongued, not overgiven to much wine, not followers of filthy gain, having the mystery of faith in a pre conscience, and let these also be first approved, and so let them administer, having no offence." And now trembling truly to make any longer stay on these matters, I can for a conclusion affirm one thing certainly, which is, that all these are changed into contrary actions, in so much that clerks (which not without grief of heart, I here confess,) are shameless and deceitful in their speeches, given to drinking, covetous of filthy lucre, having faith (or to say more truly) unfaithfulness in an impure conscience, ministering not upon probation of their good works, but upon foreknowledge of their evil actions, and being thus defiled with

innumerable offences, they are notwithstanding admitted unto the holy office : ye have likewise heard on the same day (wherein ye should with far more right and reason have been drawn to prison or punishment, than preferred unto priesthood) when our Lord demanded whom his disciples supposed him to be, how Peter answered, “Thou art Christ, the Son of the living God ;” and our Lord in respect of such his confession, said unto him : “Blessed art thou, Simon Bar-jonas, because flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, but my Father who is in heaven.” Peter therefore, instructed by God the Father, did rightly confess Christ ; but ye being taught by the devil your father, do with your lewd actions, wickedly deny our Saviour. It is said to the true priest, “Thou art Peter, and upon this rock will I build my church :” but ye resembled “the foolish man, who hath builded his house upon the sand.” And verily it is to be noted, that God joineth not in the workmanship with the unwise, when they build their house upon the deceitful uncertainty of the sands, according unto that saying : “They have made kings unto themselves, and not by me.” Similarly that (which followeth) soundeth in like sort, speaking thus : “And the gates of hell (whereby infernal sins are to be understood) shall not prevail.” But of your frail and deadly frame, mark what is pronounced : “The floods came, and the winds blew, and dashed upon that house and it fell, and great was the ruin thereof.” To Peter and his successors, our Lord doth say : “And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven.” But unto you ; “I know you not, depart from me all ye workers of iniquity,” that being separated with the goats of the left-hand, ye may together with them go into eternal fire. It is also promised unto every good priest ; “Whatsoever thou shalt loose upon earth, shall be likewise loosed in heaven : and whatsoever thou shalt bind upon earth, shall be in like sort bound in heaven.” But how shall ye loose any thing, that it may be loosed also in heaven,

since yourselves for your sins are severed from heaven, and hampered in the bands of your own heinous offences, as Solomon saith: "With the cords of his sins, every one is tied?" And with what reason shall ye bind any thing on this earth, that above this world may be likewise bound, unless it be your only selves, who, entangled in your iniquities, are so detained on this earth, that ye cannot ascend into heaven, but without your conversion unto our Lord in this life, will fall down into the miserable prison of hell?

§ 110. Neither yet let any priest flatter himself upon the knowledge of the particular cleanness of his own body, since their souls (over whom he hath government) shall in the day of judgment be required at his hands as the murderer of them, if any through his ignorance, sloth, or fawning adulation have perished, because the stroke of death is not less terrible, that is given by a good man, than that which is inflicted by an evil person: otherwise would the apostle never have said that which he left unto his successors, as a fatherly legacy; "I am clear and clean from the blood of all: for I have not forborne to declare unto you all the counsel of God." Being therefore mightily drunken with the use and custom of sins, and extremely overwhelmed with the waves (as it were) of increasing offences, seek ye now forthwith the uttermost endeavours of your minds (after this your shipwreck), that one plank of repentance which is left, whereby ye may escape and swim to the land of the living, that from you may be turned away the wrath of our Lord, who saith: "I will not the death of a sinner: but that he may be converted and live." And may the same Almighty God, of all consolation and mercy, preserve his few good pastors from all evil, and (the common enemy being overcome) make them free inhabitants of the heavenly city of Jerusalem, which is the congregation of all saints; grant this, O Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, to whom be honour and glory, world without end. Amen.

## INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

	Page		Page
AARON (the Martyr)	11	Gurthrigern	19
Ætius, or Agitius	6, 16	Italy	13
Alban, St.	11	Julius (the Martyr)	11
Ambrosius Aurelianus	22	Maglocune	29
Aquileia	13	Maximus	12
Arian heresy	12	Philo	17
Aurelius Conanus	26	Porphyry	8
Bath-hill	22	Severn	7
Belgic Gaul	7	Spain	13
Carlisle	11	Thames	7, 11
Cichican Valley	15	Tiberius Cæsar	10
Constantine	24	Treves	13
Cuneglasse	28	Verulam	11
Damnonia	24	Vortipore	27
Egypt	8		

LONDON :

WILLIAM STEVENS, PRINTER, BELL YARD,  
TEMPLE BAR.



THE  
HISTORY OF THE BRITONS;

BY

NENNIUS.

---

REVISED AND AUGMENTED FROM THE TRANSLATION  
OF THE REV. W. GUNN.

BY J. A. GILES, LL.D.

LATE FELLOW OF C. C. COLL. OXFORD.

---

LONDON:  
JAMES BOHN, 12, KING WILLIAM STREET, STRAND.

MDCCCXLI.

LONDON:  
WILLIAM STEVENS, PRINTER, BELL YARD,  
TEMPLE BAR.

TO THE RIGHT REVEREND  
EDWARD,  
LORD BISHOP OF DURHAM,  
ONE OF  
THE COUNCIL OF THE ENGLISH HISTORICAL SOCIETY,  
THIS TRANSLATION OF  
NENNIUS,  
IS RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED,  
BY HIS LORDSHIP'S  
OBEDIENT AND HUMBLE SERVANT,  
J. A. GILES.



## PREFACE.



THE History of the Britons, of which a translation is in this volume presented to the public, is generally ascribed to Nennius, but so little is known about the author, that we have hardly any information handed down to us respecting him except this mention of his name. It is also far from certain at what period the history was written, and the difference is no less than a period of two hundred years, some assigning the work to seven hundred and ninety-six, and others to nine hundred and ninety-four. The recent inquiries of Mr. Stevenson, to be found in the Preface to his new edition of the original Latin, render it unnecessary at present to delay the reader's attention from the work itself. The present translation is substantially that of the Rev. W. Gunn, published with the Latin original in 1819, under the following title: "The

‘*Historia Brittonum*,’ commonly attributed to Nennius; from a manuscript lately discovered in the library of the Vatican Palace at Rome: edited in the tenth century, by Mark the Hermit; with an English version, fac-simile of the original, notes and illustrations.” The kindness of that gentleman has enabled the present editor to reprint the whole, with only a few corrections of slight errata, which inadvertency alone had occasioned. In the margin are given the principal various readings found in MSS. different from that which Mr. Gunn employed, and moreover the two prologues and several pages of genealogies, which did not occur in that gentleman’s translation or original MS., have here been added.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.



	Page
MR. GUNN'S PREFACE . . . . .	ix
NENNIUS'S HISTORY OF THE BRITONS . . . . .	1
APPENDIX	
THE COMMENCEMENT OF NENNIUS'S HISTORY IN THE ORIGINAL LATIN, ACCORDING TO MR. GUNN'S MS.	37
HANES TALIESIN, OR THE HISTORY OF TALIESIN . . . . .	41



## MR. GUNN'S PREFACE.

---

THE Editor, some years since, during a residence in Rome, obtained permission to search the library of the Vatican palace, for manuscripts relating to the history and affairs of this country. In the course of this interesting employment, an ancient exemplar of the "Historia Brittonum" was discovered. Presuming that one which dates much higher than any hitherto known, might be free from the inaccuracies and interpolations long complained of in those of more recent date, a copy was procured; and it is this work to which the attention of the reader is solicited.

The original is on parchment, fairly written in double columns, and fills ten pages of a miscellaneous volume,\* of the folio size. Great care has been taken to obtain

\* Consisting of ninety-three pages. The first eighteen contain—"Nitardi Angelberti opus de rebus gallicis;"—from p. 19 to 46, "Frodoardi Chronicon ab obitu Karoli magni ad annum 978;"—from p. 47 to 57, the present work;—the genealogy of Karolus magnus, consisting of nine lines, then follows; and from p. 57, to the end—"Nonnull. Rom. Pontificum Vitæ a Stephano I. ad Hadrianum." From some conformity in date and subject, these are put together under the direction of the Scrittori of the library, part of whose employment it is to arrange and repair the MSS.; and who then consigns them to a binder, whose workshop is contiguous to the reading-room.

a faithful transcript of it; the orthography, however erroneous, is preserved, the capital and small letters correspond with the original; there is the same division of paragraphs; the forms of the points, and the location of them, though no guide to the sense, have one common resemblance; nor, except in a few instances, are any orthographical corrections attempted. So dry and abrupt is the style, as to set a literal version at defiance; in that now offered, the meaning of the author is, I trust, preserved. I once entertained a doubt as to the propriety of one, since the perusal of the work will be limited to that description of readers, who will never refer to a translation as an authority, when the original is before them.

Respecting the age of the manuscript, the reader is, in the course of it, thrice referred to the tenth century; and the gentlemen officially employed in the library were unanimous in assigning it to that period.\* From

\* The subjoined quotations and remarks are favourable to their opinion. In MSS. of the sixth, seventh, and eighth centuries, the characters called "uncials," and "demi-uncials," were principally used. They were rarely joined, nor were they separated into words: attempts towards punctuation are rarely seen. This form of writing was abandoned in the ninth century, and was succeeded by the small characters, much resembling those which were continued, with variations, till the invention of printing. Of these, examples are engraved in Astle (*Origin and Progress of Writing*). Tab. 19, fig. 7, are of the ninth, and Tab. 23, fig. 1, of the tenth century. In comparing the fac-simile from Mark with these rules, we may observe, that, excepting in the title, and at the commencement of certain words, and these not uniformly, nor of the greatest importance, no mixture of capitals occurs, as in the uncial or demi-uncial; none of the letters are joined, though they are divided into words.

It is a matter of surprise, that the pauses required in reading and speaking should not have earlier led to a correct system of

the title "Alexandriana," we learn, that this manuscript once belonged to that extraordinary personage,

punctuation. The ancient manner of writing among the Greeks and Romans was in capitals, placed at equal distances, without any blank spaces to separate the words, or any marks to divide or sub-divide the sentences. In some inscriptions and MSS. all the words are parted by dots or periods; in others, complete sentences, or paragraphs only, are distinguished by points or blank spaces. The origin of points is, however, of considerable antiquity, and both the Greeks and Romans had marks of distinction in their writings; but the first approach to punctuation, as now understood, consisted in the different position of one single point. "At the bottom of a letter it was equivalent to a comma; in the middle it was equal to a colon; and at the top it denoted a period, or the conclusion of a sentence. This mode was easily practised in ancient MSS. so long as they were written in capitals; but when small letters were adopted (that is, about the ninth century), this distinction could not be observed; a change was therefore made in this manner of punctuation." (*Montf. Palæog. Recens*: p. 41.) The use of the period ("Punto fermo") in the early Italian poetry, is accurately described by *Crescimbeni* (tom. i. lib. vi. c. 16. *Dell. Ortografia, del puntare, e accentare*.) "In the eighth, ninth, and tenth centuries, writers began to leave a space between the words, and to make use of commas, colons and periods; but without any degree of regularity." (*Essay on Punctuation*, p. 10.) If we examine the MS. before us by these rules, we shall find the colon, the period, and the semicolon; the latter, either of the form now used, or with the comma of it placed above, though generally in an oblique direction: *there are no single commas*. These points are all promiscuously inserted, not as in modern composition to mark the sense, but sometimes where none are wanted; at others, omitted where they are required. The plate in Astle last referred to, exhibits symptoms of the same irregular punctuation. *One cause* assigned for the arbitrary and unnecessary insertion of points, is explained by *Marini*; from whom it appears, that it was once customary for copiers and correctors of transcripts not to cancel errors, lest they should deform the MS., but to mark them by points, and that these were continued by subsequent scribes. "Antichissima usanza fu degli Scrittori, e Correctori de' Codici, e carte, sottoporre de' punti alle lettere o parole, *che si volevano concellate, e come non esistenti per non deformare lo Scritto*" (v. *Schow Charta papyr*, p. 67,) "nel papiro (l. 30,) erasi per isbaglio

Alexandria Christina,\* who, in whatever country she visited, after she had abdicated the throne of Sweden,

fatto *tuitionem vestram* in vece di *tuitio vestra*, pero non solo si sono messi i soliti punti sotto le lettere, che non si dovevano essere ; ma e sopra e per mezzo, in tanto che tra questi restassero esse quasi chiuse ed incarcerate, &c. &c. &c.” (*Marini Papiri Diplomat. &c.* No. 132. Roma, 1805. Fol.) I have examined Schow (*Romæ*, 1788, 4to.) above referred to, with his *Adnotatio Paleographica*, p. 110 of the same work ; as also a passage in Winkelman (*Storia delle Arti del Disegno*, tom. iii. p. 199. Roma, 1784), all of which treat of similar extraneous additions, but not so immediately to the subject as Marini. The greatest variety of points I ever met with in the same MS., are to be seen in the great charter of Edgar, engraved in Hickes's *Thesaurus* (vol. i. p. 158). This beautiful specimen of ancient writing dates A. 964, of course very nearly contemporary with Mark, to which the letters bear a resemblance in form. The slight similarity to the Saxon is in both much the same ; and it is remarkable, that in the former, there are a few lines in that language, without any alterations in the letters.

On the grave accent, Scaliger remarks—“*Accentus graves, qui dictionibus Latinis apponuntur, nostra memoria introducti sunt et in libros illati ; qui cum nihil juvent auditorem qui nescit utrum sit accipiendum quantum aut quantum adverbialiter vel ut nomen : nec etiam pronunciantem ; toto cœlo Latino ablegandi et fugandi sunt. Virgulæ ( , , ) et cola ( ; ; ) nostra etiam tempestate inventa à Manutio, cum antiquis prorsus incognita fuerint. Multi dicunt, ad quid istæ Latinitatis minutiae exquiruntur ? Dicam, ad quid Latinè loqui affectus ?*” (*Scaligerana*, p. 4). When small letters superseded the use of capitals in Latin MSS., the latter were retained as dates, till Arabic numerals were adopted. (*Du Cange*, v. *Numericæ notæ*.) When this occurred, it is to be regretted that dates were not written at full length, instead of abbreviations in Roman capitals ; since the omission, addition, or curvature of a single stroke, may present a period, wide of the original, to the perplexity of the chronologist, and the perversion of historical facts. The “*Historia Brittonum*” is, from this circumstance, so abundant in these inaccuracies, that I hesitate to admit as authentic any of the assigned æras, which cannot be otherwise verified ; and as they rarely conduce to illustration, *I have in the translation commonly left them unaltered.*

\* She, on Christmas day, 1654, in the Basilica of Sta. Maria Maggiore, abjured Lutheranism, and was solemnly received into

suffered no literary curiosity to pass unappropriated, which she could obtain, either by recompense or favour. When in France she purchased the Petavian library; and from a note on one of the leaves of the manuscript, it is said to have been procured by *Alexander* Petavius, from the monastery of St. Germain. Together with the spoils of the libraries of Prague and Dresden (the gift of her father Gustavus Adolphus,) she bequeathed her collection to Pope Alexander the Eighth, who, with the addition of his private library, deposited the whole in the Vatican.\*

the bosom of the church of Rome, by Alexander the Seventh, who, on this occasion, superadded to her former name that of *Alexandra*—"aggiunse al nome di Christiana (Christina) quello d'*Alessandria*." (*Platina Vit. Alessand.* 7.)

\* An attempt to trace the rise and history of this wonderful collection may not be unacceptable to the reader. There are reasons for believing that the Palatine, the Ulpian, and other celebrated libraries in ancient Rome, did not survive the disasters which befel that city, after the decease of Theodosius. (*Tiraboschi*, tom. iv. p. 318.) In the fourth century, collections of books were frequent, not only in Italy, but throughout the limits of the Latin churches. St. Augustine on his death-bed, with anxious care, consigned his own library to his successor, and all the books of his church of Hippo; a solicitude then prevalent among other bishops. (*Ibid.* 319.) In that period, private collections were formed in the houses of the Roman citizens, as appears from the epistles of Symmachus (l. 8, ep. 22), who was himself provided with one. These accumulations were often made, both from motives of vanity, and the expectation that, like the supposed property of the lamp of Epictetus, they might confer wit and learning on the possessor. Ausonius thus satirizes a collector of this description :

“ Emptis quod libris tibi bibliotheca referta est  
Doctum et Grammaticum te Philomuse putas?  
Hoc genere et chordas, et plectra et barbita conde;  
Omnia mercatus, cras citharædus eris.”—*Epist.* 44.

Though it is probable that a papal library was early formed at

Of the real author, or rather compiler of this work,

Rome, and it is not likely that such men as St. Damasus (A. 384), and St. Leon (A. 461), one celebrated for learning, the other for piety, should have been unprovided, we yet find no record of any before the time of Hilary (A. 467), who established two, in the Basilica of the Lateran Palace. (*Anastas. v. Pontif. tom. i. p. 78.*)

In the sixth century, we first hear of Bibliothecarius of the apostolical library, an office which through successive ages to the present time, has been honourably and respectably filled.

For several centuries that followed, we meet with no other than casual allusions to the papal library; but these are sufficient to assure us it was always preserved. Others, from this silence, have supposed it to be in a very neglected condition: the conjecture is not well founded; for the centre of the western churches must have been always provided with the means of gratifying the various and incessant applications made to it, from every quarter where their influence extended; and we know, that throughout every age, many were the pontiffs who were interested in the promotion, not only of sacred, but of profane learning. The calumny of John of Salisbury (*Policraticon*, l. 1, c. 9), which has been amplified by Brucker (*Hist. Crit. Philos.* l. 7, c. 2), that Gregory I. (A. 594-604) burned the works of classical authors, has been candidly examined and ably refuted by Tiraboschi (tom. v. p. 173): nor do we need further proof of the miscellaneousness of the papal collections, when we recollect, that though thinly scattered indeed over the dark ages, we yet find Roman writers whose talents would have embellished any age or country, but whose works could not have been composed without the help of many books, and those of ancient authors in particular.

A digression to the state of literature in our own country, during the seventh and eighth centuries, may be pardoned, and the view is gratifying.

In the sixth age began the conversion of the Anglo-Saxons to Christianity, by papal missionaries; and, after long and pertinacious resistance, the integrity of the long and regularly established British church was destroyed, and became subject to that of Rome. But, if lost independence was lamented, it must be conceded, that civilization and learning, far exceeding the regular growth of human proficiency in a similar period, and during a rude age in particular, was conferred on the island in exchange. From the commencement of this great ecclesiastical event, intercourse

nothing is satisfactorily known; manuscripts of it are

with Rome was incessant; persons of every rank, both clergy and laity, resorted thither (*Beda, Hist.* l. 5, c. 7), and a school was there established for the youth of Britain. Detailed particulars are scarcely to be expected. Among innumerable instances, doubtless, we know that the Saxon monk, Biscop (A. 669), who was greatly favoured by contemporary popes, and especially by Agatho, made repeated visits to Rome, expressly for the promotion of religion and the decoration of churches. In one of his returns, he was accompanied by Theodore, archbishop of Canterbury, and brought with him several ingenious artists, as glaziers and painters, together with books, relicks, robes, and pictures. (*Ibid.* l. 4, c. 18, and *Vit. Sanct.* p. 293.) This eminent prelate was a native of Tarsus, in Cilicia, and after his arrival visited great part of the island. He established a seminary at or near Oxford; and being skilful both in human and divine learning, his audience was numerous; “literis sacris simul et secularibus—abundanter ambo erant instructi, congregatâ discipulorum catervâ.” The sciences of arithmetic, astronomy, and music, were also cultivated. Some of his pupils were alive in the time of Beda, who could deliver themselves in Greek and Latin with equal ease and perspicuity. (*Ibid.* l. 4, c. 2.) Egbert, archbishop of York (A. 731), and brother of Eadbert, king of Northumberland, founded a noble library in his metropolitan city, which could only have been furnished from Rome. (*Malms. de Gestis Regum Anglor.* l. 1, c. 3.) We are not left to conjecture as to the importance of its contents; for our countryman Alcuinus, who was a pupil of that prelate, and the keeper of it, left a catalogue, which still exists. (*Gale, Scrip.* xv. p. 730. *De Pontificibus Sanct. Eccles. Ebor.* l. 1536.) The state of learning in Britain, was, at this period, superior to that of Gaul; a fact, proved by the following circumstance: Alcuinus, who was the preceptor, and the valued friend of Charlemagne, received from him the Abbacy of St. Martin at Tours, to which late in life he retired. In this privacy, he addressed a letter to his royal patron, whence the following extracts are taken: “The employments of your Alcuinus in his retreat are suited to his humble sphere; but they are neither inglorious nor unprofitable. I spend my time in the halls of St. Martin, in teaching some of the noble youths under my care the intricacies of grammar, and inspiring them with a taste for the learning of the ancients; in describing to others the order and revolutions of those shining

numerous ; and of those which the editor has examined,

orbs which adorn the azure vault of heaven ; and in explaining to others the mysteries of divine wisdom, which are contained in the holy scriptures ; suiting my instructions to the views and capacities of my scholars, that I may train up many to be ornaments to the church of God, and the court of your imperial majesty. In doing this, I find a great want of several things, particularly of those excellent books in all arts and sciences which I enjoyed in my native country, through the expense and care of my great master Egbert. May it, therefore, please your majesty, animated with the most ardent love of learning, to permit me to send some of our young gentlemen into England, to procure for us those books which we want, and transplant the flowers of Britain into France, that their fragrance may no longer be confined to York, but may perfume the palaces of Tours.—I need not put your majesty in mind, how earnestly we are exhorted in the holy scriptures to the pursuit of wisdom ; than which nothing is more conducive to a pleasant, happy, and honourable life ; nothing a greater preservative from vice ; nothing more becoming or more necessary to those especially who have the administration of public affairs, and the government of empires. Learning and wisdom exalt the low, and give additional lustre to the honours of the great. By wisdom kings reign, and princes decree justice. Cease not, then, O gracious king ! to press the nobility of your court to the eager pursuit of wisdom and learning in their youth, that they may attain to an honourable old age and a blessed immortality.” (*Henry's Hist. Eng.* 8vo. vol. iv. p. 37.) No stronger perception of the importance of letters can be conceived, than is expressed in this admirable letter. It teaches us that in this age implements of erudition were at hand, and required but a Charlemagne to patronize, and an Alcuinus to execute.

During the series of vicissitudes and disasters which for ages afflicted the Queen of Cities, her library was preserved. On the removal of the seat of government to Avignon by Clement V., the literary treasures of the see accompanied the Pontiff. (*Tirab.* tom. xi. p. 38.) This secession ended with Martin V. (A. 1417), who fixed himself at Rome, and brought part of them with him ; and, making allowance for loss and spoliation, the remainder was afterwards restored to their *original* situation by Pius V. (*Ibid.* tom. viii. l. 7, tom. xiv. p. 213.) These being deposited in the Vatican, are generally said to have been the foundation of that collection. I however find, that so long previous as the com-

the following have proved most useful in the illustrations he has attempted. These are, three in the British

mencement of the eighth century, the library of the Lateran, formed by Hilary, was transferred to the Basilica of St. Peter (a situation which answers to the present), and from time to time received augmentations. (*Tirab.* tom. v. 159. *Muratori, Scrip. Rer. Ital.* tom. iii. part 1. p. 154-163.) Nicholas v. (A. 1447-1455), Callistus III. Sixtus IV. and v. are justly deemed the parents of the library, and the enlargers of the structure in which it is contained. After many unsuccessful attempts, in the reign of the pope last mentioned, it became open to the public. (*Tirab.* vol. xiv. p. 214.)

This stupendous library, consisting chiefly of manuscripts, admits of six great divisions; viz.

1. Vaticana, consisting of those MSS. which existed from the earliest times, together with the accessions of subsequent Popes.

2. Palatina, or that which was brought from Heidelberg, and given to Gregory xv. by Maximilian, Duke of Bavaria, after the capture of that city.

3. Alexandriana, or that which was bequeathed to Alexander VIII. by Christina, queen of Sweden.

4. Urbinata, transferred to Rome from Urbino, when that Duchy devolved to the church, during the reign of Urban VIII.

5. Capponiana, given to Benedict XIV. by the Marquis Alesandro Capponi.

6. Ottoboniana, purchased of the house of Ottoboni, by the Pontiff last mentioned.

The history of the acquirement and removal of such parts of the Palatine collection to Rome as had *not been previously dispersed*, is curious: "Avea il Duca di Baviera Massimiliano nella guerra mossa contro di Federigo Elettore Palatino, siccome dicemmo, fatto l'acquisto d' Eidelberg, e di tutto il Palatinato inferiore (A. 1622.) In essa Città si trovava un insigne Biblioteca di Antichi Codici scritti a mano, Ebraici, Greci, Latini, e d' altre Lingue, raccolti per quanto fu divulgato, da tutti i Monisteri di quella Provincia, introdotta che vi fù l' Eresia. Attento il Pontefice Gregorio (xv.) a profittar anch' egli dell' altrui naufragio, si per qualche ricompensa de sussidj prestati al Duca in quell' impresa, come ancora per la pretensione, che appartenesse alla Santa Sede quel tesoro di manuscritti, come spoglio di Luoghi sacri fece gagliarde istanze di ottenerli, e il Duca vi<sup>o</sup> condiscese. Scrivono alcuni che la persona inviata dal Papa Urbano VIII. ad

Museum,\* one in the Bodleian, another in the library of Ben'et College, Cambridge, and one lent him by Owen Pughe, Esq. formerly the property of Selden.

The "Historia Brittonum," is by turns assigned to *Nennius*, to an *anonymous Anglo-Saxon*, to the *two Gildas's (Minor and Sapiens)*, and to *Mark the Anchorite*. On close examination, however, I do not find sufficient reason for yielding the claim to any one of these in preference to another. To account for the singularity of assigning to various authors the same performance, I learn from the gentleman last-men-

Eidelberga per trasportar que' Codici a Roma, a cagion della poca sua accortezza lasciò sfiorar quella sì riguardevole Libreria, essendone stati asportati i Codici migliori. *Non pochi certamente se ne trovano nella Real Biblioteca di Vienna.* Di poca attenzione per questo fu accusato Leone Alacci uomo di gran credito per la sua erudizione, e per tanti libri dati alla luce, giacchè a lui fu appoggiata l' incombenza suddetta." (*Muratori*, A. 1623. *Tirabos.* tom. viii. part 1. p. 65, edit. 1812.)

The Alexandrian collection has also been supposed to have suffered spoliation before it reached its present destination; "*passò*," is the expression of *Muratori* (A. 1689), "*per la maggior parte, nella Vaticana.*" The number of manuscripts it comprises, is estimated at between 1900 and 2000.

\* 1. Vitell. Vitell. A. XIII. P. Plut; IX, A. intitled "*Nennii antiquum exemplar.*"

2. Vespas. D.XXI. p. 115. Plut. VI. A. intitled "*Antiquissimum exemplar Nennii in quo,*" plura continentur quam in aliis.

3. Plut. 624. V. 28. T. This copy was once in the possession of Sir Simon D'Ewes, who professes to have compared it with many others. He styles it "*Anglo-Saxonici anonymi chronica.*"

The Bodleian, is No. 2016 of the Catalogues of MSS. published 1697. Fol. now Bodl. No. 163. This was once in the collection of Archbishop Usher, who enriched it with notes and collations. The title runs, "*Incipiunt gesta Britonum a Gilda (Gilda Minori) sapiente composita.*" To the attention of the late Rev. Mr. Price, librarian, the editor owes extracts so copious as nearly to amount to a complete transcript.

tioned that nothing was more common than for the transcribers of the ancient British manuscripts to affix their own names to the same work, with such additions or retrenchments as they thought proper, so as to make it pass for their own composition. The hope expressed in the first page of the preface, that a copy nearer the time to which the subject relates, than any other which has descended to us, might be free from the errors, interpolations, and substitutions, which disfigure those of later date, has been in a great measure defeated. For so many of these have, by repeated transcripts made between the period of compilation and the tenth century, insinuated themselves into the text, as materially to vitiate the original, that the censure of St. Jerome on the insufficient scribes in his day, is applicable to the case before us: “*Imperitiam notariorum librariorumque\* incuriam, qui scribunt quod non inveniunt, sed quod intelligunt: et dum alienos errores*

\* Notarius and Librarius (to which may be added Antiquarius) are terms which, before the invention of printing, frequently denoted the profession of a copier.—The third of these, was properly the transcriber of such MSS. as were ancient. (*Isidor. l. 6, c. 14. Macri Hierolexicon. Du Cange v. Antiquarii.*) The eminent and excellent Cassiodorus (480-575), at the age of seventy retired from public life, to a monastery he founded near his native Squillaci, and to which he prescribed the rules of St. Benedict. He enriched it with a valuable library, from which the works of profane authors were not excluded. Among all his amusements, he declares, that the copying MSS. gave him the most pleasure; artists were engaged to adorn them with figures, and to bind them elegantly. When he had attained his ninety-third year, he composed a treatise on orthography, for the use of his monks, that they might hence learn to transcribe correctly. In times less remote, as the demands for books increased, and as public schools and universities were formed, besides such as were claustral, secular scribes were established universally and became a

emendare nituntur, ostendunt suos." (*Epist. ad Lucinum*, No. 27.)

numerous body. Not only men, but women were thus occupied, to whose insufficiency the defects of many MSS. are assignable. (*P. Sarti de Profess. Bonon.* tom. i. part 1. p. 186.) This authority refers to the female scribes of Bologna. We may, however, believe the practice to have been general; for Engelhardus (*Abbas*, A. 1200, *Vita Stæ. Michildis Virgin.* tom. v. c. 23. *Canissii*), reports an accident which happened to a nun in the exercise of this employment: "Cum soror una cui usus erat scribendi membranam, dum ad lineas punctaret subulam incautè trahens, oculum transfigit." Defective transcript is, however, not solely to be attributed to females; for the accurate and elegant Petrarch indignantly exclaims: "Who shall prescribe an effectual remedy for the ignorance and worthlessness of copiers, who spoil and confuse the performances they undertake?—At this time, every one who can *redden letters*\* or guide a pen, though void of learning, skill, or ability, assumes the character of a scribe. I should not censure their *defects in orthography* (*for that is a long forgotten art*,) if they would faithfully transcribe what is before them. They might betray their insufficiency, but we should have in the copy the substance of the original. They now confound both together, and by substituting one thing for another, we can scarce identify the author from which they transcribed. If Cicero, Livy, and many other illustrious writers, could return to life, and re-peruse their own compositions, would they understand them, and doubting the whole, *would they believe them to be their own, or rather, those of some barbarous people?*" (*De Rem. Utriusque Fortunæ*, l. 1, dial. 43.)

\* The terms *miniator* and *illuminator*, are not unfrequently used in common. The first is, however, derived from the colouring substance used; it has not properly any reference to the diminutive size of the picture represented, nor is it exclusively so considered by the *modern Italians*. "Miniare, quasi *minio* describere. *Relever en vermeillon.* Joann. de Janua. Miniare minio præparare vel scribere minio. Miniator, qui minio scribit, vel præparat minium. Miniographus qui minio scribit. Miniographia, scriptura cum minio facta.—(*Du Cange.*) *Illuminator*, Aurarius pictor, qui libros variis figuris, iisque aureis condecorat. *Illuminare*, pingere coloribus, adumbrare, and the word was employed so early as the eighth century, in a less contracted manner; and the following passage from the Epistles of Alcuinus (No. 1), may perhaps explain the origin of that branch of the art.—"Quosdam stellarum ordine, ceu picto cujuslibet magnæ domus culmine *inluminari* gestio."—(*Du Cange.*)

As Nennius has commonly been considered the author of this chronicle, it may be expected that I should pro-

It was once the custom publicly to expose lists of MSS. as a modern bookseller does his printed catalogue. These expressed the number of pages each contained, the terms on which they might be *bought, consulted, perused, or copied*. To purchase, was not within the ability of every one. At Bologna, highly celebrated for beauty and fidelity of execution, the price of a bible, in the thirteenth century, was eighty bolognese livres; three of which equalled two fiorini d'oro.—This coin is no longer current. “The florins of Florence weigh a drachm, and are no less than twenty-four carats fine, according to Italian writers; being intrinsically worth about twelve shillings.” (*Pinkerton on Medals*, vol. ii. p. 19.)

At the same period and place, 200 florins were given for a splendid missal, ornamented with gold letters and painted designs. The word Bibliotheca was equivocal, and frequently meant the books of the Old and New Testament only. (*Macri Hierolexicon*.) The following extract from a catalogue of the books of Cardinal Guala, A. 1227, bequeathed by him to the monastery of St. Andrea, in Vercelli, of which he was the founder, is curious, both as examples of splendid decoration, and for the enumeration of letters in which they were written: “*Bibliotheca magna de littera Parisiensi, cooperta purpurâ, et ornata floribus aureis et literæ capitales aureæ—item alia bibliotheca de littera Boloniensi cooperta corio glauco—item alia bibliotheca de littera Boloniensi cum corio rubro: item bibliotheca de littera Anglicana—item bibliotheca parva pretiosissima de littera Parisiensi cum litteris aureis et ornamento purpureo—item Exodus, Leviticus, de littera antiqua—item XII Prophete in uno volumine de littera Lombarda—item moralia B. Gregorii super Job, de bona littera antiqua aretina.*” (*Tiraboschi*, tom. iv. l. 1. p. 83.) Hitherto, except for very distinguished purposes, MSS. had been copied with but little attention to elegance; they now became objects of splendid luxury. The aid of painters was sought for, (“*hodie scriptores non sunt scriptores sed pictores,*”) who displayed their talents in gilding initials and ornamenting the margins, in which were whimsical figures grinning like baboons;—for such was the conceit of the facetious Odofredus Beneventanus (preceptor to the celebrated Jacobus Baldewinus, A. 1230 (*Trithem. apud Fabric. Bib. Eccles.* p. 108), who thus exposes the misapplication of the stipend granted to a young student by his father—“*Dixit Pater filio—vade Parisios vel Bononiam, et mittam tibi annuatim centum*

duce such traditions respecting him as are now remaining. Nennius and Gildas are described by Jeffrey (l. 1, c. 17. l. 4, c. 3 and 4) and Tysilio (*Coll. Camb.* p. 30 and 75) as British historians. "Nennius (Nyniaw) who was the brother both of Caswallon (Cassibelinus) and Ludd, quarrelled with the latter; and of this dissension, Gildas the historian has given a large account; for which reason I choose to pass it over for fear of debasing by my accounts what so great a writer has so eloquently related." It is further asserted, that Nen-

libras. Iste, quid fecit? Ivit Parisios, et fecit libros suos *babuinare* de literis aureis—ibat ad cerdonem et faciebat se calceari omni die Sabbati." *Babuinare* may not exclusively apply to the quadruped, but may indicate those capricious animal-forms displayed in the margins of illuminated MSS. "Babewynus Simii species. Ital. *Babbuino*—Visitatio Thesaurariæ S. Pauli Londinensis ann. 1295. Imago quædam pulchra Beatæ Virginis cum pede quadrato stante super quatuor Babewynos.—Hinc stulti infantes Babewini dicuntur." (*Macri Hierolexicon*, v. *Babewynus*.)

These designs are not meant for the animals to which they bear some resemblance, nor are they the result of arbitrary fancy merely, but symbolical modifications of infernal spirits trodden under foot by the blessed Virgin, as frequently represented in carvings and illuminated missals, under those of divine persons. ("The dragon shalt thou tread under thy feet." *Psalm*, 91, 13—*Gori. diptych. passim*.) Perhaps from an idea of degradation, they are frequently seen on the under side of the folding seats in cathedral stalls, called "*Misericordiæ*," at times of such a description, as to betray the low ebb of the popular feeling of decorum, which even a sacred edifice could not chasten.

In the dark ages, every man was his own manufacturer. I meet with the appointment in monasteries of "*Pergamenarius—officium in monasteriis*,"—apud Adelardum in Statut. Corbinensis, l. 1, c. 1. Qui Pergamena parabat, et est in vita B. Mariani Abbat. Ratispon. n. 9. (*Du Cange*) Adelardus (A. 753-826) was of the blood royal in France, and founded the monastery of Corbio in Saxony. I quote from memory, but if I mistake not, by the capitulary of Charlemagne, monks were intitled to the skins of animals taken in hunting, to make covers for their books.

nus encountered Julius Cæsar, and fell by his hand. Balæus\* (*Cent.* 1. c. 15 and 59) affirms “that this was the same Nennius who wrote a book of the British history, which was afterwards translated into Latin by his

\* This biographer thus describes Nennius and his reputed associates: “Nennius Bannochorensis collegii Pontifex (ut illum Capgravius appellat) et egregius brytannorum doctor olim fuit Elvodugi probi, atque Beulani presbyteri non infimus”—that he was a monk of Bangor iscoed, and one of the fifty who escaped from the massacre of that community under Ædelfrid, A. 613; that he composed his history from the annals of the Romans, the Scots, and Saxons; from the chronicles of Jerome, Eusebius, Prosper, Isidore, and St. Patrick; from the British Taliessin, Melkin, Gildas, Elvodugus, and others; that he flourished in the reign of Cadvan, A. 620; that Elvodugus Probus was his preceptor, A. 590, and who was succeeded in the same capacity by Beulanus presbyter, A. 610; and that Samuel Beulanus, a Briton, and son of the last-mentioned, was the annotator of his history. The legends speak of a St. Nennius, who, in the sixth century presided in the “Magnum Monasterium.” (*Brittannia Sancta*, vol. i. p. 50—125. *Usser. Antiq.* p. 494.) Capgrave (from whom Bale professes to have made this compilation) was provincial of the Augustine friars, and confessor to the famous Duke of Gloucester, epitomised the *Sanctilogium Britanniaë*; adding here and there many fancies and interpolations of his own. (*Nicholson*, pt. ii. c. 1, p. 98.) The epitome itself is extracted from the “*Historia aurea*” of John of Tynmouth. (MS.) The only Elvodugus (Elbodus or Elbodius) visible in the history and antiquities of Wales, lived in the eighth, and in the beginning of the ninth century. Dates do not indeed accord, but incidental facts make it probable that it is the same which is alluded to by Capgrave. “Elvod, a saint descended from Caw, a Bishop at Caer Gybi, in Mona, and afterwards at Bangor Deiniol (Caermarthenshire) whom Caradog styles primate of Gwynedd (North Wales).” He died in the year 809. (*Camb. Biog. Elvod. Deinolen.*) “The clergy of Wales had hitherto preserved with great firmness, an independence of the Romish church. About this period (A. 762), however, they suffered Elbodius to be appointed by the Pope, Archbishop of Wales, who soon brought them to act in conformity to the Romish observance of Easter.” (*Warrington's Wales*, vol. ii. p. 404.—*H. Lhuyd. Frag.* fol. 55.)

namesake the Abbot of Bangor."\* If any truth be involved in this extravagance, we may infer, that there

\* I have, on the term Bangor, received from Mr. Owen Pughe the following valuable remarks: "The word Bangor, in Welsh, is simply an appellation for any college; and all the Christian societies among the Britons, began to assume that epithet towards the close of the fifth century; that is, when they began to have regular jurisdictions over districts, and to have Gwnydai, or *white-houses*, which was a term for chapter houses: an institution introduced by Germanus and his followers. Before that period, the British Christians called their societies by the simple name of Côr, a circle, or congregation. But at the time above stated, they dignified the name by the additional epithet of Ban, high, superior or supreme, that is to say Bangor, (variously written in MSS. Ban Cor, Banchor, and Bangor.) This makes the expression "Magnum monasterium," (generally with respect to Nennius applied to the celebrated monastery of Bangor iscoed, in Flintshire) equivocal; because "great monastery," is nothing but a translation of the appellative Bangor, unless an additional name had been given with it to fix its locality. I will here subjoin a list of the Bangors, or colleges of Wales, from a curious MS. enumerating the principal fathers of the British church. *Côr Dyvrig*, or congregation of Dubricius, at Caer Llion upon Wysc. Dewi, or St. Davids, removed this to Mynyw, or Menevia, where Gynyr of Caer Gawç, his grandfather on his mother's side, had left all his lands for the support of the church. *Côr Tathan*, or *Bangor Tathan*, in Caer Went, or Venta silurum, founded by Tathan, son of Amwn Zu, under the patronage of Esner Gwent, in the beginning of the sixth century. *Bangor Garmon*, or the college of Germanus, at Llanveithin in Glamorgan. This was founded by St. German, about A. D. 460. *Côr Tewdws* in Caer Worgorn, or the congregation founded by the Emperor Theodosius in Caer Worgorn. This was destroyed by the Irish in the middle of the fifth century. It was restored by Germanus, over which he placed Illtyd or Iltutus, whence it was called Bangor Illtyd, or College of St. Iltutus, in Glamorgan, now called by the English Lantwit Major, and by the Welsh Llan Illtyd Vawr.

*Bangor Catog*, or College of Catog, founded by him under the direction of St. Germanus, at the present Llancarvan in Glamorgan. *Bangor y Ty Gwyn* ar Dâv, the college of the White House on 'Tav, or the present Whitland Abbey in Caermarthenshire, was founded by Pawl Hên, or Paulinus, over which he placed the

was once a British history which may have furnished these excerpts, or such of them as have reference to a

brothers Flewyn and Gredivel, about A. D. 480. Flewyn and Gredivel were the sons of Ithel Hael of Armorica. (*Cambrian Biography*, p. 123, 124, 280.) *Bangor Padarn*, or College of Padarn. This society, consisting of one hundred and twenty members, was established by Padarn the son of Pedredin ab Emyr Llydaw, in the close of the fifth century. He came from Armorica with his cousin Cadvan; and was first at Bangor Illyd. Bangor Padarn, was at the present Llanbadarn Vawr, in Cardiganshire. (*Camb. B.* p. 217.) *Côr Beuno*, or the congregation of Beuno, which he established about the close of the sixth century. It came afterwards to be called Bangor Clynog, or College of Clynog; and now Clynog Vawr in Arvon (Caernarvonshire). *Bangor Cadvan*, or College of Cadvan, also called Bangor Enlli, or College of Bardsey; founded by Cadvan, in the close of the fifth century, under the direction of Emyr Llydaw, and patronage of Einiou, son of Owain Danwyn, as sovereign of the country. This was one of the most celebrated of the Welch seminaries. *Bangor Deiniol*, or the college of Deiniol, the son of Dunod ab Pabo, who founded it, A. D. 525. This is also called Bangor Vawr uç Conwy, the great college over Conwy, and Bangor Vawr yn Arlleçwez, or the great college in Arlleçwez; being the present Bangor in Caernarvonshire. It was raised to the dignity of a bishopric in the time of Deiniol, who died in 554. In the time of Elood, this see became the metropolitan of North Wales. Elood died in A. 809. *Côr Cybi*, or congregation of Cybi, at the present Caer Gybi, or Holyhead, in Anglesey. *Côr Penmon*, founded by Einion, in the beginning of the sixth century, over which he placed Seiriol, and thence also called Côr Seiriol, or congregation of Seiriol. This was in Priestholme island, near Beaumaris. *Bangor Asav*, or College of Asav, afterwards called Llan Elvy by the Welsh, and St. Asaph by the English. This was founded by Asav, under the direction of Cyndeyrn (Kentigern) in the former part of the sixth century. *Bangor Dunod*, or College of Dunod, son of Pabo. It was founded by Dunod and his sons Deiniol Cynwyl and Gwarthan, in the beginning of the sixth century, upon lands granted by Cyngen, king of a part of Powys, and the Vale Royal. This place was also called Bangor Maelor, the College of Maelor; Bangor Vaws yn Maelor, the great College in Maelor; and Bangor Iscoed, or College of Underwood. This seminary never flourished after the massacre of its members; after

remote period, and that it was originally written in the vernacular tongue.

The present manuscript varies not, as to general import, from the copies of the "Historia Brittonum" already known. It differs from those edited by Gale (*Scrip.* xv.) and Bertram (*Scrip.* III.) in certain transpositions of the subject—in the omission of two introductory prefaces—in not acknowledging the assistance of Samuel Bewley, (the reputed master of Nennius)—in detaching the life of St. Patrick from the body of the work, and placing it at the end.

In the brief parallel now to be offered, I confine myself to the copy edited by Bertram, not only as the latest, but because it exhibits marks of care and diligence superior to all others.

In Bertram (c. 1) the date of the transcript is brought down to the thirtieth year of Enerauth (Anarawed) king of Monia (Anglesey) "qui regit *modo* regnum Wenedociæ regionis." This son of Roderic the great was the sovereign of North Wales, who fixed his royal seat at Aberfraw, in Anglesey: he began his reign A. 877. (*Warrington's Wales*, vol. i. p. 223.) In Mark, instead of this date, both in the commencement (p. 1), and in the course of the narrative repeatedly, that of the fifth of Edmund is substituted.

the bloody battle there in A. 603, when the Britons were defeated there under Broçwel. (*Camb. Biog.* p. 91.)

The term was not restricted to our island. There was a Bangor in Belleisle, on the coast of Brittany. (*Welsh Dict.* v. *Bangor*.) St. Patrick founded the monastery of *Beannchor* in Ulster, of which Comhgallus was the first abbot. (*Jocelin's Life of St. Patrick*, c. 98.) In Scotland there are two parishes called Banchory; one in Aberdeen, the other in Kincardineshire."

From page 2 to page 9 (*Bertram*, c. 2 to the end of c. 11), is briefly discussed the subject of the first peopling of Britain, and the adjacent isles; the arrival and settling of the Picts and Scots professedly extracted from the Roman annals, from ancient books, and from tradition. The facts are abruptly given, and scarcely connected; the last historical event records the victories of the Cunedda family in the fourth century. The narrative is here interrupted, and the copier makes a computation to the year of transcript, or the fourth of Mervinus. Here is terminated what may be called the first division of the work; the materials of it were probably brought together soon after the period of the successes last mentioned, which form a decided epocha in the Cambrian history.

In page 10 (*Bertram*, 2. 12 and 13), another relation is adduced; taken “ex veteribus libris veterum nostrorum.” The line of Brutus is here made to coalesce with the patriarchal genealogies of tribes and families spread over the face of the ancient world. From page 11 to page 17 (*Bertram*, c. 14, to c. 28), is narrated the invasion, prevalence, and departure of the Romans. In page 18 (*Bertram*, c. 28 and 29), the Saxons are introduced; Vortigern receives them in Thanet. We here find, *but in Mark alone*, a repetition of the computation to the fifth year of Edmund—“in quo scribimus.” From page 19 (*Bertram*, c. 29 to 35), the civil detail is again interrupted, by an account of the mission and miracles of St. Germanus. In page 29 to page 33 (*Bertram*, c. 35 to 53), details of our national history are resumed. These comprise the treachery and successes of the Saxons, the battles of Vortimer, the pre-

tended second mission of St. Germanus, and the fall of Vortigern. From the fifty-third chapter of Bertram, though the facts differ not materially from those in Mark, the arrangement is not the same. In page 34 of Mark, is recited, the influx of the Saxons into Britain, the death of Hengist, the battles of Arthur, and the unremitting augmentation of that people to the time of Ida, A. 547. Omitting all intermediate events, the final computation to the year 945 (“*ad hunc quem nos scribimus*”) answering to the *fifth of Edmund*, is again repeated, and the termination of the work is announced by the following solemn appeal:—“*Et quicumque hoc legerit in melius augeatur! Prestante domino nostro IHU CRISO qui cum coaeterno Patre et Spiritu Sancto vivit et regnat Deus per infinita secula seculorum : amen.*”

The life of St. Patrick (apparently no part of the performance originally) follows in a detached form. In *other copies*, this legend is incorporated in the work, of which it makes a part from the *fifty-second to the sixty-first chapter*.

Independently of the historical notices dispersed throughout this chronicle, there are others referable to a subject at all times interesting, but which has of late years risen in importance from the researches of men of taste and learning: I mean the origin of romantic fiction in Britain. Opinions as to the people with whom this species of composition first arose, are various; and the imputed honour has, among others, been conceded to the Celts, Scandinavians, Armoricans, and Arabians. Ideas so unsettled argue no agreement in those points, which essentially affect the question; and where there is no common ground to stand upon, conviction is little to

be expected. The plans proposed are in general too exclusive, for when a system is universal, and acts with the force and certainty of an instinct, it is not assignable to accidents, but to a settled principle in the human constitution. Leaving it then to others to filiate the aberrations of excursive fancy,—If asked, when did romantic fiction commence? I should reply,—from the time man began to hope and to fear—for even in the best constructed mind, so powerfully do these motives irritate his restless temper, alternately urging him to seek pleasure or alleviation in variety, and, whether disappointed or successful, still to continue exploring distant and illusive sources of gratification. Thus considered, the *anticipations of to-morrow* are little more than *romances of the mind*, which, in a greater or less degree, subject the understanding to the imagination. The *garb is universal*, for all nations have their fabulous age;—the *fashion and colour*, as settled by custom or modified by novelty, *are local*; from the more elegant mythology of ancient Greece, to our domestic system of romance, in which Robin Goodfellow and his fairy train, once charmed and awed the rustic mind.

Among the authors above alluded to, the opinions of Mr. Ritson have had their share in swaying those of the public. He declares that the Welsh “have no tales or chronicles, the produce of the elder Welsh bards, nor by any other writer, more early at least than Geoffrey of Monmouth; *if the Welsh have such stories, they are doubtless from the French or English, and by way of farther proof of their recency, are all in prose.*” (*Diss. on Romantic Fiction*, p. 36.)

Consistently with the theory advanced I contend,

that writers, like painters, are not the inventors of the mythological or legendary subjects they undertake to delineate; but seek honour and emolument only, by making those the object of their respective arts, to which opinion has given popularity. That several of the tales and traditions recorded by Geoffrey of Monmouth were in existence before his day, is proved by the date of the transcript before us.

Whether the germ of the druidical associations was first unfolded in this island, is a question not easily determined; they were certainly matured, and for ages naturalized, within its limits. In the course of time they yielded to the change assigned to human institutions, yet after the period of virtual abolition, and long subsequent to the regular establishment of Christianity,\* the spirit of bardism hovered over the unsubdued retreats of its beloved Cambria; and so powerfully did the effects of habit, and the principles it inculcated, pervade the minds and imaginations of the provincials, as to impart a corresponding character to their productions. The following instances prove both the truth of this observation, and the fallaciousness of Mr. Ritson's assertion.

The tower or ship of glass (p. 7,) filled with men, and seen off the coast of Ireland, is part of an ancient bardic legend. "Merddin, the bard of Ambrosius, is said to have constructed a house of glass,† in which he went to

\* On the gradual abolition of the druidical order and coalescence with Christianity, much valuable information is to be derived from Pelloutier (*Hist. des Celts*, tom. vii. c. 4), and the researches of the learned Benedictines of the congregation of St. Maur. (*Hist. Lit. de la France*, tom. i. p. 289. tom. ii. p. 13.)

† Three centuries after the time of Mark, "in the Spanish Romance of Alexander, written by Joan Lorenzo Segura de

sea, accompanied by nine Cylveirrd bards, of whom nothing was heard afterwards." (*Camb. Biog.* v. *Merd-din.*) A farther development of this singular detail is to be found in "The Cambrian Popular Antiquities," (p. 75) published by Mr. Roberts.

"Whether Merlin survived Arthur, or not, has not been recorded in history; but it is most probable that he did, and through some apprehension of the Saxons, endeavoured to escape them by sea. On this occasion, he is said to have sailed in a ship of glass, and to have taken with him the thirteen curiosities of Britain.\*

Astorga, about the middle of the thirteenth century, is a long description of Alexander's descent into the sea, in a house of glass; which I have elsewhere had occasion to quote, and therefore will not repeat here. Where the Spaniard found the story I cannot say; if he is to be understood literally, it was not a written legend, but one which he received from tradition.—In the German legend of St. Anna, written at the close of the year 1100, Mr. Coleridge has shewn me the same story of Alexander thus related, with circumstances of greater sublimity than elsewhere—"He let himself down to the bottom of the sea in a glass," &c. &c. &c. (*Southey's Specimens of the later English Poets*, Preface, p. 9.) Farther details of this singular fiction are to be found in Dunlop's *History of Fiction* (vol. ii. p. 127, second edition). In the continuation of the *Orlando Furioso*, where the spirits are summoned to attend Demagorgon in council, some of them, impelled by the bellows of demons, sail through the air in ships of glass :

"Portate alcune in gran navi di vetro,  
Da i fier Demonii, cento volte e cento  
Con mantici soffiâr lor facean dietro,  
Che mai non fu per l'aria il maggior vento."

Canto 1. Stan. 8.

\* I omit the detail for the sake of brevity. On this passage, the author remarks that "the magical powers assigned to some of these curiosities, are so similar to what is to be found in the Arabian tales, as to point out a common origin." Without researches into more remote antiquity—for Arabian tales might be substituted the fictions of the early Greeks, for all the *ingredients* of magical incantation exist in Homer. Pliny (l. 30, c. 1,

According to the account of this voyage, as given by Mr. Lewis Morris, he conveyed them to Bardsey

“Maxime tamen,” &c.) asserts, that no allusions to such practices are to be discovered in the Iliad,\* but that in the Odyssey we find magical transformations, charms, and evocation of infernal spirits; and most likely all the vulgar arts of divination particularized by Theocritus (Id. 2), were used at the same period. That the Druids were in possession of these secrets, was believed by ancient authors. In the mystical poems of their bards, whether they refer to the rural theology then cultivated, or the awful appeal to supernatural powers, allusions to them continually occur, in the Mabinogion or institutional tales. These compositions, of colour and fashion peculiarly their own, and which except in the abridgment, of that of Culhwch in the Cambrian Biography, that of Pwyll in the Cambrian Register (vol. i. p. 177), and some extracts dispersed in Davies's mythology, are unknown to the English reader. Culhwch is told by an oracle he is to have no wife but Olwen. She is a personification of nature, and is only to be won by exploring her mysteries: he sets out in search of her, and encounters a variety of extraordinary adventures. Pwyll is a prince of Dyved (Demetia), the subject principally turns on the magical transformations of the hero. I was some time since favoured by Mr. Owen Pughe with the perusal of translations of several of these tales, but knowing he intended them for the press, did not ask his permission to make extracts from them. The result of a second application will not be unacceptable to the reader.

“Agreeably to your request, I send some particulars of the Mabinogion.

The first List:

1. Ymarwar Lludd a Llevelys: *The contention of Lludd and Llevelys.*
2. Benddwyd Maxen Wledig: *The Dream of the Emperor Maximus.*
3. Brân Vendigid: *Brân the Blessed.*
4. Pwyll Penderig Dyred: *Pwyll the chieftain of Dyved.*
5. Manawydan ab Llyr: *Manawydan the son of Llyr.*
6. Math ab Mathonwy: *Math the son of Mathonwy.*

No. 1. Lludd the son of Beli, was the father of Caswallaon

\* May we not, however, except Achilles, who bore almost a charmed life; and the impenetrable armour forged for him by Vulcan after the death of Patroclus?

island, and died, and was buried there, which is very probable: though one of the Triads says, that after he

(Cassivellaunus): he and Llevelys his brother at some game at ball, which, with the events it produced, and their reconciliation, are the subject of the tale.

No. 2. The dream of Maximus is concerning his elevation to power, wherein are narrated the incidents leading to its accomplishment.

No. 3. The events in the tale of Brân arise out of the tale of Pwyll. Matholwç, the supreme King of Ireland, lands with a fleet at Harleç, in North Wales, where Brân kept his court, to demand Branwen, the sister of Brân, in marriage. His request is granted, and he returns to Ireland. Events then arise, wherein Branwen is insulted with a box on the ear, called one of the three fatal insults of Britain; for Brân invades Ireland to avenge his sister. Only seven return from the expedition, after having destroyed nearly all the people of Ireland; and Brân being mortally wounded, he orders his companions who survive, to carry his head to be interred in the White Hill, in London, as a protection against all future invasions, so long as the head remained there. The sequel of the tale recites their progress to London to bury the head. At Harleç, in their way, they are kept seven years listening to the birds of Rhianow, singing in the air; and in Dyved (Dimetia), by attending to the last words of Brân, they stay in a grand hall for eighty years, enjoying every kind of pleasing amusement, all their misfortunes and object of further progress being kept out of their minds; but, by opening a door looking towards Cornwall, their real condition breaks in upon their minds, which compels them to pursue their journey. Brân was the father of Caradawg (Caractacus); and according to the Triads, he with all his family were carried to Rome, and remained there seven years as hostages for the son. Brân there meets with some Christians, and being converted, he prevails on two Christians to accompany him to Britain, by which means the faith is introduced; which is the cause of the epithet of Blessed being given him.

No. 4. Part of the tale of Pwyll has been given in the second volume of the Cambrian Register, and is continued in vol. 3, now printing.

No. 5. Manawydan is the brother of Brân, and is one of the seven that carried his head to London: the events of this tale are a continuation of the former; and the end of it is the doing away

had sailed he was never heard of more ; which, if the writer lived in South Wales, might well be true there, considering the remote and unfrequented situation of

some spells or enchantments laid upon Dimetia, arising out of events in the tale of Pwyll.

No. 6. This tale follows the other in connexion ; but the incidents in it are distinct, so that it may be considered as a separate one. It opens with an embassy from Math, prince of Gwynedd (Venedotia), to Pryderi the son of Pwyll, prince of Dyved (Dimetia). The ambassadors are twelve bards, with Gwydion the son of Don at their head, who had magic spells at command. The object was, by means of rich presents, to obtain a race of new animals, which Pryderi had possession of, and these were swine, being the first of the kind in the island. The request is refused ; but Gwydion, by illusions, obtains the swine.

Pryderi, in revenge, invades Gwynedd ; the consequence is the ruin of both countries ; and the tale proceeds with a series of spells, often very fanciful and striking.

The above tales I class by themselves, as they contain *not one incident connected with the adventures of Arthur and his warriors*, who are the actors in the following class of tales.

#### Second List :

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| No. 1. Peredur ab Evrog :                       | <i>Peredur the son of Evrog.</i>  |
| No. 2. Culhwç ab Cilydd<br>ab Celyddon Wledig : | <i>Culhwç the son of Cilydd, sove-<br/>reign of Celyddon (Caledonia).</i> |
| No. 3. Geraint ab Erbin :                       | <i>Geraint the son of Erbin.</i>  |
| No. 4. Owain ab Urien .                         | <i>Owain the son of Urien.</i>  |

I have not a copy of No. 4. I believe there are several other tales in the Hengwrt collection.

With respect to the periods when these tales were composed, it would be difficult to say ; but I have no hesitation in concluding them all to be anterior to the conquest of Wales by Ed. I. A. D. 1283. All the personages therein were real characters, most of whom are often mentioned by the earlier bards ; and many are mentioned in the historical Triads ; many of the events in the tales are likewise recorded in the Triads. Taliessin, who flourished in the sixth century, mentions several of the incidents of these tales ; so also do the poets who flourished in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries."

Bardsey.\* “The ship of glass is, by the author of the *Mythology of the Druids*, ingeniously explained as signifying a sacred vessel, emblematic of the ark, and the name of Bangor Wydrin, or Glass Bangor (an ancient name of Glastenbury) confirms the idea of Wydr, literally glass, signifying sacred. I believe *gwydr*, in these instances, has no connexion with, or relation to, the same sound, when signifying glass, but that its true signification is sacred, though not now so used.” (*Roberts's Camb. Antiq.* p. 78.) Thus defined, the true meaning of this legend is no other than that Merlin went to sea in a sacred ship. On examining the work last quoted, a small boat of glass was, in the opinion of Mr. Davies, a symbol of initiation into the Druidical mysteries. “We are not hence to conclude that the Druids regarded the sacred ship as constructed of that material; but that they esteemed little glass models as very sacred symbols of the mystical vessel, and held the material itself in religious esteem. Thus the stranger in the poem of the chair of Taliessin, is introduced to the nocturnal mysteries, by exhibiting his boat of glass, which must have been an emblem of the

\* The Saxon incursion above mentioned may be that alluded to in the following quotation from the poem called the chair of Taliessin:—“that for the lands of Bardsey there will be an inroad—a fleet shall arise on the face of the water. Let them call upon him whom we have found sufficient, that he may protect us from the wrath of the alien race.” This spot, as well as Mona, was sacred to the ancient superstition, “and seems to have been one of the rocks of the supreme proprietor, or places of re-animation.” (*Davies's Mythology*, p. 503.) The chair of Taliessin, like several other of the ancient British poems, contains references to the native superstitions, mixed with tenets of the Christian faith, (*See Appendix.*)

ark. Merddin and his nine bards put to sea in the house of glass, which could have been nothing more than a mystical representation of the ark, &c. &c. &c.” (*Mythology and Rites of the British Druids*, p. 211, 270, 277, 522.)

The next instances are the predictions and legend of Merlin. These, in Mark, appear in an incipient form; they were augmented from time to time, and became a standing and national oracle: in Jeffrey, they are amplified, and brought down lower than Canute. During the fourteenth century, an event is recorded, which proves their acknowledged importance. In a national duel between the English and the French nobility, which was fought in Brittany (between Ploermel and Josselin), in the reign of John the Second, Brembo, one of the champions of the former, when his associates were brought together for the combat, asserted, that he had a prediction of Merlin in his favour:—the prophet deceived him. (*Massi's History of Duelling*, pt. 1. sec. 10. p. 47.) These prophecies were afterwards brought down to the demise of our James the First. (*Caermarthen*, 1812, 8vo.)

The next allusion I notice in these prophecies, is the cementing the foundation of Vortigern's castle with the blood of a human sacrifice. Notwithstanding the severe edicts issued by Tiberius against magical arts, and immolation, both in Gaul and Britain, it appears, that in the time of Pliny (*N. H.* l. 30. c. 1. *Sueton.* v. *Claud.* c. 25.) they still continued. Davies is of the opinion, that these practices were only suppressed in those parts of the provinces which were more immediately under the inspection of government, and of course obnoxious

to public censure. He says, there was in the north of Britain, or in an adjacent island (it might be beyond the limits of the empire), a seminary of Druids, where the doctrines and discipline of heathenism were cultivated without controul; and after the departure of the Romans, their abominable rites were brought back from the north into Mona, and into other parts of Wales; and that the northern seminary was not suppressed till the close of the sixth century. One of the presidents of this society was Gwenddolew, a passage relating to whom is quoted from the Hoianau, a poem, by Merddin, in the northern dialect. (*Davies's Mythology*, p. 461, 466. *Camb. Biog. Gwenddolew.*)

The following singular compromise between Christianity and Druidism, is given from Dr. Jamieson's History of the Culdees (p. 20.)—"from which it should seem, that the sacrifice of a human victim was thought by the Druids a necessary propitiation, when the commencement of an undertaking was not successful. When Columba first attempted to build Iona, the walls, as is said, by the operation of some evil spirit, fell down as fast as they were erected. Columba received supernatural intimation that they would never stand, unless a human victim was buried alive. According to one account, the lot fell on Oran, the companion of the saint, as a victim that was demanded for the success of the undertaking:" he suffered accordingly. (*Roberts's Camb. Antiq.* p. 63.)

The next relates to the concealment of the white and red dragons; the first the emblem of the Saxons, the second of the Britons. This fable is of early existence, and is explained in the Triad of the three concealments

of Britain,—“ third, the dragons buried by Lludd, the son of Beli, in the city of Pharan (Dinas Emrys), in the mountains of Snowden. These three concealments were laid under the protection of God and his attributes, and with imprecations against the person who should distinguish them. Vortigern discovered the dragons to avenge himself on the Cymry, for their disaffection to him, and then invited the Saxons as allies against the Picts,” &c. (*Collec. Camb.* vol. i. p. 69. n.) “ The whole of this story seems to have been founded on some bardic ceremony, or imposture, now unknown, in which Merddin seems to have been merely the instrument of the bards; and, perhaps, a party of them, which had embraced Christianity. Whatever was the real nature of this transaction, the pretensions of the bards to prophecy were constant; and those of Merddin were allowed, and, certainly, had a great and decisive effect in sustaining the spirit of the Britons to oppose their enemies.” (*Ibid.* p. 120. n.)

Mr. Ritson is equally pertinacious as to the Gothic antiquities. “ The Edda itself, if not a rank forgery, is, at least, a comparatively modern book of the thirteenth or fourteenth century, manifestly compiled long after Christianity was introduced into the north. Saxo, a very ancient writer (1204), knew nothing of any Odin, but a magician, whom the stupidity of the inhabitants of Upsal adored as a God.” (*Diss.* p. 30.) This scepticism is disproved by the Saxon genealogy in Mark, of which Odin is the stem;—and, also, by the authority of Bede, (*Hist.* l. 1. c. 15.) where the same origin is asserted.

The compilation before us, apparently formed by a Cambrian Briton, is best illustrated by the records of

the principality. These have of late years been objects of minute investigation to men, who from talents and attainments are capable of estimating their value;—and the names of PUGHE, TURNER, ROBERTS, and DAVIES, will ever be remembered with respect. Nor can I perceive how we are justified in withholding from the traditions of our own country, the faith we repose on those of distant ages, which, like them, were orally delivered, and on which so much of ancient history is founded. That I do not always yield my assent to the extent assumed by those gentlemen, is perhaps owing to my own incompetency. As occasion requires, I place in them that temperate confidence to which they seem entitled. Of the authors now cited, my best thanks belong to Mr. OWEN PUGHE; for, independently of his publications, his assistance, both by letter and conference, has never been denied. The most respectful conduct towards an absent friend is to avoid making him the subject of panegyric; yet, interested motives apart, I cannot suppress the avowal, that I feel gratified in ranking him with those I highly esteem.

If my opinion were demanded as to the merit of this production, I should reply,—Ancient literary remains, rescued from long oblivion, are often contemplated with a degree of partiality, bordering on enthusiasm, independent of their intrinsic excellence. But, in works like the present, which display no expansion of mind, nor any traces of genius, it might be more beneficial, as it would be more equitable, calmly to estimate them by the utility to which they are subservient.

As a literary composition, the “*Historia Brittonum*” maintains a place between the meagre chronicle, and

that superior effort of talent which claims the name of history. Neither does the compiler deserve the appellation of author; since any one, destitute of endowments, but possessing common industry, might, from existing authors, the registers of convents, and memorials orally delivered, have gleaned these excerpts. The value of it, then, consists in being the repository of certain occurrences, in our days not elsewhere recognized, or of so early a date, and of traditions otherwise forgotten. In a dispassionate survey, therefore, let us not underrate the labours of the obscure recluse, who, though occupied in an humble department of literature, was collecting materials, which, aided by learning, and corrected by judgment, were destined in the course of ages to illustrate and adorn the pages of our national history. Thus considered, the estimate of this and similar manuscripts is allied to higher motives than curiosity, or the passion for ancient lore; since by them we are induced to investigate the skill possessed by our forefathers in those arts which meliorate and gladden life; we learn to be grateful that we live in an age when, by means of progressive improvements, we are not only freed from innumerable privations as well as evils which they endured, but are taught to form a just estimate of our social and domestic happiness; and, as the circle of our pursuits expands, by the efforts of united wisdom and the gradual progress of experience, cheers us with anticipations of higher degrees of intellectual advancement.

A man has no right to complain of the task he voluntarily imposes on himself, and which he may always abandon; but, on occasions like the present, the discouragements he encounters in his progress are for-

midable and incessant. These arise principally from contradictory, sterile, and marvellous details, which, unchastised by criticism, indolence, or credulity, have been transmitted from one chronicle to another; so that the narrative which the antiquarian composes in the morning, like the web of Penelope, is commonly to be disarranged in the evening. To be thus tantalized might, indeed, be tolerable, could he ascertain that truth would eventually reward his assiduity. Yet, under the happiest guidance of ability, and with materials less defective, if care and industry have not been wanting, allowances are not denied to instances of unsuccessful elucidation.\*

I mean not hence to soften the reader by deprecation; an attempt which never rescued an author from oblivion, nor protected him from insufficiency. But it is allowable to assert, that no one, who, for the first time, undertook the editing of a work like that now offered to the public, could be aware of the irksomeness of the engagement, nor who could more truly sympathize with the wearied copiers of Greek manuscripts, who not unfrequently thus hailed the termination of their labours:

ΩΣΠΕΡ ΞΕΝΟΙ ΧΑΡΟΥΣΙ ΠΑΤΡΙΔΑ ΒΛΕΠΕΙΝ  
 ΟΥΤΩΣ ΚΑΙ ΟΙ ΓΡΑΦΟΥΣΙ ΤΕΛΟΣ ΒΙΒΛΙΟΥ.

\* "In magnâ sylvâ boni venatoris est indagantem feras, quamplurimas capere, nec, cuiquam culpæ fuit *non omnes cepisse*." (Columell. l. 5. c. 1.)



NENNIUS'S  
HISTORY OF THE BRITONS.



# NENNIUS'S HISTORY OF THE BRITONS.

---

## I. THE PROLOGUE.

§ 1. NENNIUS, the lowly minister and servant of the servants of God, by the grace of God, disciple of St. Albotus, to all the followers of truth sendeth health.

Be it known to your charity, that being dull in intellect and rude of tongue, I have presumed to deliver these things in the Latin tongue, not trusting to my own learning, which is little or none at all, but partly from traditions of our ancestors, partly from writings and monuments of the ancient inhabitants of Britain, partly from the annals of the Romans and the chronicles of the sacred fathers, Isidore, Hieronymus, Prosper, Eusebius, and from the histories of the Scots and Saxons, although our enemies, not following my own inclinations, but, to the best of my ability, obeying the commands of my seniors; I have lispingly put together this history from various sources, and have endeavoured, from shame, to deliver down to posterity the few remaining ears of corn about past transactions, that they might not be trodden under foot, seeing that an ample crop has

been snatched away already by the hostile reapers of foreign nations. For many things have been in my way, and I, to this day, have hardly been able to understand, even superficially, as was necessary, the sayings of other men ; much less was I able in my own strength, but like a barbarian, have I murdered and defiled the language of others. But I bore about with me an inward wound, and I was indignant, that the name of my own people, formerly famous and distinguished, should sink into oblivion, and like smoke be dissipated. But since, however, I had rather myself be the historian of the Britons than nobody, although so many are to be found who might much more satisfactorily discharge the labour thus imposed on me ; I humbly entreat my readers, whose ears I may offend by the inelegance of my words, that they will fulfil the wish of my seniors, and grant me the easy task of listening with candour to my history. For zealous efforts very often fail : but bold enthusiasm, were it in its power, would not suffer me to fail. May, therefore, candour be shown where the inelegance of my words is insufficient, and may the truth of this history, which my rustic tongue has ventured, as a kind of plough, to trace out in furrows, lose none of its influence from that cause, in the ears of my hearers. For it is better to drink a wholesome draught of truth from a humble vessel, than poison mixed with honey from a golden goblet.

§ 2. And do not be loath, diligent reader, to winnow my chaff, and lay up the wheat in the storehouse of your memory : for truth regards not who is the speaker, nor in what manner it is spoken, but that the thing be true ; and she does not despise the jewel which she has

rescued from the mud, but she adds it to her former treasures.

For I yield to those who are greater and more eloquent than myself, who, kindled with generous ardour, have endeavoured by Roman eloquence to smooth the jarring elements of their tongue, if they have left unshaken any pillar of history which I wished to see remain. This history therefore has been compiled from a wish to benefit my inferiors, not from envy of those who are superior to me, in the 858th year of our Lord's incarnation, and in the 24th year of Mervin, king of the Britons, and I hope that the prayers of my betters will be offered up for me in recompense of my labour. But this is sufficient by way of preface. I shall obediently accomplish the rest to the utmost of my power.

## II. THE APOLOGY OF NENNIUS.

§ 3. I, NENNIUS, disciple of St. Elbodus, have endeavoured to write some extracts which the dulness of the British nation had cast away, because teachers had no knowledge, nor gave any information in their books about this island of Britain. But I have got together all that I could find as well from the annals of the Romans as from the chronicles of the sacred fathers, Hieronymus, Eusebius, Isidorus, Prosper, and from the annals of the Scots and Saxons, and from our own ancient traditions. Many teachers and scribes have attempted to write this, but somehow or other have abandoned it from its difficulty, either on account of frequent deaths, or the often-recurring calamities of war. I pray that every reader who shall read this book, may pardon me, for having attempted, like a chattering jay, or like some weak witness, to write these things, after they had failed. I yield to him who knows more of these things than I do.

## III. THE HISTORY.

§ 4, 5. FROM Adam to the flood, are two thousand and forty-two years. From the flood to Abraham nine hundred and forty-two. From Abraham to Moses, six hundred(*a*). From Moses to Solomon, and the first building of the temple, four hundred and forty-eight. From Solomon to the re-building of the temple, which was under Darius, King of the Persians, six hundred and twelve years are computed. From Darius to the ministry of our Lord Jesus Christ, and to the fifteenth year of the Emperor Tiberius, are five hundred and forty-eight years. So that from Adam to the ministry of Christ, and the fifteenth year of the Emperor Tiberius, are five thousand two hundred and twenty-eight years. From the Passion of Christ are completed nine hundred and forty-six; from his Incarnation, nine hundred and seventy-six; being the fifth year of Edmund, King of the Angles.

Chronology.

(*a*) And forty, according to Stevenson's new edition. The rest of this chronology is much contracted in several of the manuscripts, and hardly two of them contain it exactly the same.

§ 6. The first age of the world is from Adam to Noah; the second from Noah to Abraham; the third from Abraham to David; the fourth from David to Daniel; the fifth to John the Baptist; the sixth from John to the Judgment, when our Lord Jesus Christ will come to judge the living and the dead, and the world by fire.

Ages of the world.

The first Julius. The second Claudius. The third Severus. The fourth Carinus. The fifth Constantius. The sixth Maximus. The seventh Maximianus. The eighth another Severus Æquantius. The ninth Constantius.

Roman emperors who visited Britain.

Here beginneth the history of the Britons, edited by Mark the Anchorite, a holy bishop of that people.

Brutus.  
Thirty-three  
cities.

V. R. twen-  
ty-eight,  
twenty-one.

§ 7. The island of Britain derives its name from Brutus, a Roman consul. Taken from the south-west point it inclines a little towards the west, and to its northern extremity measures eight hundred miles, and is in breadth two hundred. It contains thirty-three cities, *viz.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ·I <sup>u</sup> · Cair ebrauc <sup>h</sup> ( <i>York</i> ). | ·XV <sup>u</sup> III· Cair daun ( <i>Doncaster</i> ).                   |
| ·II <sup>u</sup> · Cair ceint ( <i>Canterbury</i> ).        | XV <sup>u</sup> III Cair britoc ( <i>Bristol</i> ).                     |
| ·III <sup>u</sup> · Cair gurcoc.                            | XX <sup>u</sup> · Cair meguaid ( <i>Meivod</i> ).                       |
| ·III <sup>u</sup> · Cair guorthegern.                       | ·XXI· Cair mauiguid.  |
| ·V· Cair gustaint ( <i>Carnarvon</i> ).                     | ·XXII Cair ligion ( <i>Chester</i> ).                                   |
| ·VI <sup>u</sup> · Cair guoranegon ( <i>Worcester</i> ).    | ·XXIII <sup>u</sup> · Cair guent ( <i>Caerwent near<br/>Chepstow</i> ). |
| ·VII· Cair segeint ( <i>Silchester</i> ).                   | ·XXIII· Cair collon.  |
| ·VIII· Cair guin truis.                                     | ·XXV· Cair londein ( <i>London</i> ).                                   |
| ·IX <sup>u</sup> · Cair merdin.                             | ·XXVI <sup>u</sup> · Cair guorcon.                                      |
| ·X <sup>u</sup> · Cair peris ( <i>Porchester</i> ).         | ·XXVII <sup>u</sup> · Cair lerion ( <i>Leicester</i> ).                 |
| ·XI <sup>u</sup> · Cair lion.                               | XXVIII <sup>u</sup> · Cair draithou ( <i>Draiton</i> ).                 |
| ·XII <sup>u</sup> · Cair mencipit ( <i>Verulam</i> ).       | ·XXVIII <sup>u</sup> · Cair pensavelcoin ( <i>Il-<br/>chester</i> ).    |
| ·XIII <sup>u</sup> · Cair caratauc.                         | ·XXX <sup>u</sup> · Cair teim.  |
| ·XIII· Cair ceri ( <i>Cirencester</i> ).                    | ·XXXI <sup>u</sup> · Cair urnahc ( <i>Wroæcester</i> ).                 |
| ·XV· Cair gloui ( <i>Gloucester</i> ).                      | ·XXXII <sup>u</sup> · Cair celernion.                                   |
| XVI <sup>u</sup> · Cair luilid ( <i>Carlisle</i> ).         | ·XXXIII <sup>u</sup> · Cair loit coit.                                  |
| ·XVII <sup>u</sup> · Cair graut ( <i>Granchester</i> ).     |   |

These are the names of the ancient cities of the island of Britain. It has also a vast many promontories, and castles innumerable, built of brick and stone. Its inhabitants consist of four different people; the Scots, the Picts, the Saxons, and the ancient Britons.

Three is-  
lands.  
(a) Inis-  
gueith, or  
Gueith.

§ 8. Three considerable islands belong to it; one, on the south, opposite the Armorican shore, called (a) Wight; another between Ireland and Britain called Eubonia, or Man; and another directly north, beyond the Picts, named Orkney; and hence it was anciently a prover-

bial expression, in reference to its kings and rulers, "He reigned over Britain and its three islands."

§ 9. It is fertilized by several rivers, which traverse Rivers. it in all directions, to the east and west, to the south and north; but there are two pre-eminently distinguished among the rest, the Thames and the Severn, which formerly, like the two arms of Britain, bore the ships employed in the conveyance of the riches acquired by commerce. The Britons were once very populous, and exercised extensive dominion from sea to sea.

§ 10. Respecting the period when this island became Trojans its colonizers. inhabited subsequently to the flood, I have seen two distinct relations. According to the annals of the Roman history, the Britons deduce their origin both from the The whole of this, as far as the end of the paragraph, is omitted in several MSS. Greeks and Romans. On the side of the mother, from Lavinia, the daughter of Latinus, King of Italy, and of the race of Silvanus, the son of Inachus, the son of Dardanus; who was the son of Saturn, King of the Greeks, and who having possessed himself of a part of Asia, built the city of Troy. Dardanus was the father of Troius, who was the father of Priam and Anchises; Anchises was the father of Eneas, who was the father of Ascanius and Silvius; and this Silvius was the son of Eneas and Lavinia, the daughter of the king of Italy. From the sons of Eneas and Lavinia descended Romulus and Remus, who were the sons of the holy Queen Rhea, and the founders of Rome. Brutus was consul when he conquered Spain, and reduced that country to a Roman province. He afterwards subdued the island of Britain, whose inhabitants were the descendants of the Romans, from Silvius Posthumus, thus named, because born after the death of his father Eneas. His mother, Lavinia, having concealed herself during her pregnancy, and he having been born in a wood, was denominated Silvius; and hence the Roman kings are called *Sylvan*; but the Britons are those who sprang from the family of Brutus. Or Bruto.

Eneas, after the Trojan war, arrived with his son in Italy; and having vanquished Turnus, married Lavinia, the daughter of king Latinus, who was the son of Faunus, the son of Picus, the son of Saturn. After the death of Latinus, Eneas obtained the kingdom of the Romans, and Lavinia brought forth a son, who was named Silvius. Ascanius founded Alba, and afterwards married. His wife, Lavinia, became pregnant, and Eneas being informed of it, ordered his son to send his magician, to examine his wife whether the child conceived were male or female. The magician came and examined the wife and pronounced it to be a son, who should become the most valiant among the Italians, and the most beloved of all men. In consequence of this prediction, the magician was put to death by Ascanius; but it happened that the mother of the child dying at his birth, he was named Brutus; and after a certain interval, agreeably to what the magician had foretold, he displayed such superiority among his play-fellows, that they seemed to consider him as their chief. He was, from envy, expelled from Italy, and came to the islands of the Tyrrhene sea, when he was exiled on account of the death of Turnus, slain by Eneas. He then went among the Gauls, and built the city of the Turones, called Turnis. At length he came to this island, named from him Britannia, dwelt there, and filled it with his own descendants; and it has been inhabited from that time to the present period.

V. R. who should slay his father and mother and be hated by all mankind.

V. R. whilst he was playing with some others, he shot his father with an arrow, not intentionally but by accident.

Descendants of Æneas.  
V. R. thirty-seven.

§ 11. Eneas reigned over the Latins three years; Ascanius thirty-three years; after whom Silvius reigned twelve years, and Posthumus thirty-nine years: the latter, from whom the kings of Alba are called Silvan, was brother to Brutus, who governed Britain at the time Eli the high priest judged Israel, and when the ark of the covenant was taken by a foreign people. But Posthumus his brother reigned among the Latins.

Picts.

§ 12. After an interval of not less than eight hun-

dred years, came the Picts, and occupied the Orkney Islands, whence they laid waste many regions, and seized those on the left-hand side of Britain, where they still remain, keeping possession of a third part of Britain to this day.

§ 13. Long after this, the Scots arrived in Ireland from Spain. The first that came was Partholomus, with a thousand men and women; these increased to four thousand; but a mortality coming suddenly upon them, they all perished in one week. The second was Nimech, the son of \_\_\_\_\_, who, according to report, after having been at sea a year and a half, and having his ships shattered, arrived at a port in Ireland, and continuing there several years, returned at length with his followers to Spain. After these came three sons of a Spanish soldier with thirty ships, each of which contained thirty wives; and having remained there during the space of a year, there appeared to them, in the middle of the sea, a tower of glass, the summit of which seemed covered with men, to whom they often spoke, but received no answer. At length they determined to besiege the tower; and after a year's preparation, advanced towards it, with the whole number of their ships, and all the women, one ship only excepted, which had been wrecked, and in which were thirty men, and as many women; but when all had disembarked on the shore which surrounded the tower, the sea opened and swallowed them up. Ireland, however, was peopled, to the present period, from the family remaining in the vessel which was wrecked. Afterwards, others came from Spain, and possessed themselves of various parts of Britain.

Scots.  
Spaniards.  
V. R. Partholomæus.

A blank is here in the MS. Agnomen, or Agnomen is found in some of the others.

§ 14. Last of all came one Hoctor, who continued there, and whose descendants remain there to this day. Istoreth, the son of Istorinus, with his followers, held Dalmeta; Buile had the island Eubonia, and other adjacent places. The sons of Liethali obtained the

V. R. Damhactor,  
Clamhactor,  
and Elamhactor.

V. R. Dalmata.

V. R. Lictan.

V. R. De-  
metæ.

country of the Dimetæ, and the provinces Guoher and Cetgueli, which they held till they were expelled from every part of Britain, by Cuneda and his sons.

§ 15. According to the most learned among the Scots, if any one desires to learn what I am now going to state, Ireland was a desert, and uninhabited, when the children of Israel crossed the Red Sea, in which, as we read in the Book of the Law, the Egyptians who followed them were drowned. At that period, there lived among this people, with a numerous family, a Scythian of noble birth, who had been banished from his country, and did not go to pursue the people of God. The Egyptians who were left, seeing the destruction of the great men of their nation, and fearing lest he should possess himself of their territory, took counsel together, and expelled him. Thus reduced, he wandered forty-two years in Africa, and arrived, with his family, at the altars of the Philistines, by the Lake of Osiers. Then passing between Rusicada and the hilly country of Syria, they travelled by the river Malva through Mauritania as far as the Pillars of Hercules; and crossing the Tyrrhene Sea, landed in Spain, where they continued many years, having greatly increased and multiplied. Thence, a thousand and two years after the Egyptians were lost in the Red Sea, they passed into Ireland and the district of Dalrieta. At that period, Brutus, who first exercised the consular office, reigned over the Romans; and the state, which before was governed by regal power, was afterwards ruled, during four hundred and forty-seven years, by consuls, tribunes of the people, and dictators.

V. R. the  
sea-coast.

The Britons came to Britain in the third age of the world; and in the fourth, the Scots took possession of Ireland.

The Britons who, suspecting no hostilities, were unprovided with the means of defence, were unanimously and incessantly attacked, both by the Scots from the west, and by the Picts from the north. A long interval

after this, the Romans obtained the empire of the world.

§ 16. From the first arrival of the Saxons into Britain, to the fourth year of King Mermenus, are computed four hundred and twenty-eight years; from the Nativity of our Lord to the coming of St. Patrick among the Scots, four hundred and five years; from the death of St. Patrick to that of St. Bridget, forty years; and from the birth of Columcille to the death of St. Bridget, four years.

Saxons.

V. R. Columba.

Some MSS. add, the beginning of the calculation is 23 cycles of 19 years from the Incarnation of our Lord to the arrival of St. Patrick in Ireland, and they make 438 years.

And from the arrival of St. Patrick to the cycle of 19 years in which we live are 22 cycles, which make 421 years.

(a) V. R. Ne-gue.

§ 17. I have learned another account of this Brutus from the ancient books of our ancestors. After the deluge, the three sons of Noah severally occupied three different parts of the earth: Shem extended his borders into Asia, Hem into Africa, and Japhet into Europe.

The first man that dwelt in Europe was Alanus, with his three sons, Hisicion, Armenon, and Neugio (a). Hisicion had four sons, Francus, Romanus, Alamanus, and Brutus. Armenon had five sons, Gothus, Valagothus, Cibidus, Burgundus, and Longobardus. Neugio had three sons, Vandalus, Saxo, and Boganus. From Hisicion arose four nations—the Franks, the Latins, the Germans, and Britons: from Armenon, the Gothi, Valagothi, Cibidi, Burgundi, and Longobardi; from Neugio, the Bogari, Vandali, Saxones, and Tarinci. The whole of Europe was subdivided into these tribes.

Alanus is said to have been the son of Fethuir; Fethuir, the son of Ogomuin, who was the son of Thoi; Thoi was the son of Boibus; Boibus of Semion; Semion of Mair; Mair of Ecthactus; Ecthactus of Aurthack; Aurthack of Ethech; Ethech of Ooth; Ooth of Aber; Aber of Ra; Ra of Esraa; Esraa of Hisrau; Hisrau of Bath; Bath of Jobath; Jobath of Joham; Joham of Jafet; Jafet of Noah; Noah of Lamech; Lamech of Mathusalem; Mathusalem of Enoch; Enoch of Jared; Jared of Malalehel; Malalehel of Cainan; Cainan of Enos; Enos of Seth; Seth of Adam; and

V. R. Fethebir.

This genealogy is different in almost all the MSS.

Adam was formed by the living God. We have obtained this information respecting the original inhabitants of Britain from ancient tradition.

§ 18. The Britons were thus called from Brutus: Brutus was the son of Hisicion; Hisicion was the son of Alanus; Alanus was the son of Rhea Silvia; Rhea Silvia was the daughter of Numa Pompilius; Numa was the son of Ascanius; Ascanius of Eneas; Eneas of Anchises; Anchises of Troius; Troius of Dardanus; Dardanus of Flisa; Flisa of Juuin; Juuin of Jafeth; but Jafeth had seven sons; from the first, named Gomer, descended the Galli; from the second, Magog, the Scythi and Gothi; from the third, Madian, the Medi; from the fourth, Juuan, the Greeks; from the fifth, Tubal, arose the Hebrei, Hispani, and Itali; from the sixth, Mosoch, sprung the Cappadoces; and from the seventh, named Tiras, descended the Traces: these are the sons of Jafeth, the son of Noah, the son of Lamech.

Some MSS. add, I will now return to the point from which I made this digression.

§ 19. The Romans having obtained the dominion of the world, sent legates or deputies to the Britons to demand of them hostages and tribute, which they received from all other countries and islands; but they, fierce, disdainful, and haughty, treated the legation with contempt.

Then Julius Cæsar, the first who had acquired absolute power at Rome, highly incensed against the Britons, sailed with sixty vessels to the mouth of the Thames, where they suffered shipwreck whilst he fought at Deal (the proconsul of the British king, who was called Belinus, and who was the son of Minocannus who governed all the islands of the Tyrrhene Sea), and thus Julius Cæsar returned home without victory, having had his soldiers slain, and his ships shattered.

There is here some corruption or defect in the original.

§ 20. But after three years he again appeared with a large army, and three hundred ships, at the mouth of the Thames, where he renewed hostilities. In this attempt many of his soldiers and horses were killed; for

the same consul had placed iron pikes (*a*) in the shallow part of the river, and this having been effected with so much skill and secrecy as to escape the notice of the Roman soldiers, did them considerable injury; thus Cæsar was once more compelled to return without peace or victory. The Romans were, therefore, a third time sent against the Britons; and under the command of Julius, defeated them near a place called Trinovantum, forty-seven years before the birth of Christ, and five thousand, two hundred and twelve years from the Creation.

V. R. Pro-  
consul.  
(*a*) The MSS.  
add ' et se-  
men belli-  
cosum, *id*  
*est*, Cetilou.'

V. R. fifteen.

Julius was the first exercising supreme power over the Romans who invaded Britain: in honour of him the Romans decreed the fifth month to be called after his name. He was assassinated in the Curia, in the Ides of March, and Octavius Augustus succeeded to the empire of the world. He was the only emperor who received tribute from the Britons, according to the following verse of Virgil:

“Purpurea intexti tollunt aulæa Britanni.”

§ 21. The second after him, who came into Britain, was the Emperor Claudius, who reigned forty-seven years after the birth of Christ. He carried with him war and devastation; and, though not without loss of men, he at length conquered Britain. He next sailed to the Orkneys, which he likewise conquered, and afterwards rendered tributary. No tribute was in his time received from the Britons; but it was paid to British emperors. He reigned thirteen years and eight months. His monument is to be seen at Moguntia (among the Lombards), where he died in his way to Rome.

§ 22. After the birth of Christ, one hundred and sixty-seven years, King Lucius, with all the chiefs of the British people, received baptism, in consequence of a legation sent by the Roman Emperors and Pope Euaristus.

Or Eucha-  
ristus.

§ 23. Severus was the third emperor who passed the sea to Britain, where, to protect the provinces recovered from barbaric incursions, he ordered a wall and a rampart to be made between the Britons, the Scots, and the Picts, extending across the island from sea to sea, in length one hundred and thirty-three miles: and it is called in the British language, Guual. Moreover, he ordered it to be made between the Britons, and the Picts and Scots; for the Scots from the west, and the Picts from the north, unanimously made war against the Britons; but were at peace among themselves. Not long after Severus dies in Britain.

This passage is certainly corrupt, the meaning is briefly given in the translation.

§ 24. The fourth was the emperor and tyrant, Caritius, who, incensed at the murder of Severus, passed into Britain, and attended by the leaders of the Roman people, severely avenged upon the chiefs and rulers of the Britons, the cause of Severus.

§ 25. The fifth was Constantius, the son of Constantine the Great. He died in Britain; his sepulchre, as it appears by the inscription on his tomb, is still seen near the city named Cair segeint. Upon the pavement of the above-mentioned city he sowed three seeds of gold, silver, and brass, that no poor person might ever be found in it. It is also called Minmanton.

§ 26. Maximus was the sixth emperor that ruled in Britain. It was in his time that consuls began, and that the appellation of Cæsar was discontinued: at this period also, St. Martin became celebrated for his virtues and miracles, and held a conversation with him.

§ 27. The seventh emperor was Maximianus. He withdrew from Britain with all its military force, slew Gratianus, the king of the Romans, and obtained the sovereignty of all Europe. Unwilling to send back his warlike companions to their wives, children, and possessions in Britain, he conferred upon them numerous districts from the lake on the summit of Mons Jovis, to the city called Cant Guic, and to the western Tumulus,

that is, to *Cruc Occident*. These are the *Armoric Britons*, and they remain there to the present day. In consequence of their absence, Britain being overcome by foreign nations, the lawful heirs were cast out, till God interposed with his assistance. We are informed by the tradition of our ancestors that *seven* emperors went into Britain, though the Romans affirm there were *nine*.

The eighth was another *Severus*, who lived occasionally in Britain, and sometimes at Rome, where he died.

The ninth was *Constantius*, who reigned sixteen years in Britain, and, according to report, was treacherously murdered in the seventeenth year of his reign.

§ 28. Thus, agreeably to the account given by the Britons, the Romans governed them four hundred and nine years.

V. R. and  
died in Bri-  
tain.

After this, the Britons despised the authority of the Romans, equally refusing to pay them tribute, or to receive their kings; nor durst the Romans any longer attempt the government of a country, the natives of which massacred their deputies.

§ 29. We must now return to the tyrant *Maximian*. *Gratian*, with his brother *Valentinian*, reigned seven years. *Ambrose*, Bishop of *Milan*, was then eminent for his skill in the dogmata of the Catholics. *Valentinianus* and *Theodosius* reigned eight years. At that time a synod was held at *Constantinople*, attended by three hundred and fifty of the fathers, and in which all heresies were condemned. *Jerom*, the Presbyter of *Bethlehem*, was then universally celebrated. Whilst *Gratian* exercised supreme dominion over the world, *Maximus*, in a sedition of the soldiers, was saluted emperor in Britain, and soon after crossed the sea to *Gaul*. At *Paris*, by the treachery of *Merobaudes*, his master of the horse, *Gratian* was defeated, and flying to *Lyons*, was taken and put to death; *Maximus* afterwards associated his son *Victor* in the government.

V. R. 'Three.'

V. R. 318.

*Martin*, distinguished for his great virtues, was at this

period Bishop of Tours. After a considerable space of time, Maximus was divested of royal power by the consuls Valentinianus and Theodosius, and sentenced to be beheaded: in the same year also his son Victor was killed in Gaul by Argobustes, five thousand six hundred and ninety years from the creation of the world.

Some MSS. add 'at the third milestone from Aquileia.' Omitted in some MSS.

§ 30. Thrice were the Roman deputies put to death by the Britons, and yet these, when harassed by the incursions of the barbarous nations, viz. of the Scots and Picts, earnestly solicited the aid of the Romans. To give effect to their entreaties, ambassadors were sent, who made their entrance with impressions of deep sorrow, having their heads covered with dust, and carrying rich presents, to expiate the murder of the deputies. They were favourably received by the consuls, and swore submission to the Roman yoke, with whatever severity it might be imposed.

The Romans, therefore, came with a powerful army to the assistance of the Britons; and having appointed over them a ruler, and settled the government, returned to Rome: and this took place alternately during the space of three hundred and forty-eight years. The Britons, however, from the oppression of the empire, again massacred the Roman deputies, and again petitioned for succour. Once more the Romans undertook the government of the Britons, and assisted them in repelling their neighbours; and, after having exhausted the country of its gold, silver, brass, honey, and costly vestments, and having besides received rich gifts, they returned in great triumph to Rome.

V. R. and honey.

§ 31. After the above-said war between the Britons and Romans, the assassination of their rulers, and the victory of Maximianus, who slew Gratian, and the termination of the Roman power in Britain, they were in alarm forty years.

V. R. Maximus.

Vortigern then reigned in Britain. In his time, the natives had cause of dread, not only from the inroads of

the Scots and Picts, but also from the Romans, and their apprehensions of Ambrosius.

In the mean time, three vessels, exiled from Germany, arrived in Britain. They were commanded by Hors and Henegest, brothers, and sons of Guictglis. Guictglis was the son of Guicta; Guicta of Guechta; Guechta of Vuoden; Vuoden of Frealof; Frealof of Fredulf; Fredulf of Finn; Finn of Folegauld; Folegauld of Geta, who, as they say, was the son of a god, not of the omnipotent God and our Lord Jesus Christ (who before the beginning of the world, was with the Father and the Holy Spirit, co-eternal and of the same substance, and who, in compassion to human nature, disdained not to assume the form of a servant), but the offspring of one of their idols, and whom, blinded by some demon, they worshipped according to the custom of the heathen. Vortigern received them as friends, and delivered up to them the island which is in their language called Tanet, and, by the Britons, Roihin. Gratianus Æquantius at that time reigned in Rome. The Saxons were received by Vortigern, four hundred and forty-seven years after the passion of Christ, and, "according to the tradition of our ancestors," from the period of their first arrival in Britain, to the first year of the reign of king Edmund, five hundred and forty-two years; and to that in which we now write, which is the fifth of his reign, five hundred and forty-seven years.

V. R. not the God of Gods, the Amen, the Lord of Hosts, but one of their idols which they worshipped.

V. R. Some MSS. add 'the Second.'

The rest of this sentence is omitted in the MSS.

§ 32. At that time St. Germanus, distinguished for his numerous virtues, came to preach in Britain: by his ministry many were saved; but many likewise died unconverted. Of the various miracles which God enabled him to perform, I shall here mention only a few: I shall first advert to that concerning an iniquitous and tyrannical king, named Belinus. The holy man, informed of his wicked conduct, hastened to visit him, for the purpose of remonstrating with him. When the man of God, with his attendants, arrived at the gate of the city,

they were respectfully received by the keeper of it, who came out and saluted them. Him they commissioned to communicate their intention to the king, who returned a harsh answer, declaring, with an oath, that although they remained there a year, they should not enter the city. While waiting for an answer, the evening came on, and they knew not where to go. At length, came one of the king's servants, who bowing himself before the man of God, announced the words of the tyrant, inviting them, at the same time, to his own house, to which they went, and were kindly received. It happened, however, that he had no cattle, except one cow and a calf, the latter of which, urged by generous hospitality to his guests, he killed, dressed, and set before them. But holy St. Germanus ordered his companions not to break a bone of the calf; and, the next morning, it was found alive uninjured, and standing by its mother.

§ 33. Early the same day, they again went to the gate of the city, to solicit audience of the wicked king; and, whilst engaged in fervent prayer they were waiting for admission, a man, covered with sweat, came out, and prostrated himself before them. Then St. Germanus, addressing him, said, "Dost thou believe in the Holy Trinity?" To which the man having replied, "I do believe," he baptized, and kissed him, saying, "Go in peace; within this hour thou shalt die: the angels of God are waiting for thee in the air; with them thou shalt ascend to that God in whom thou hast believed." He, overjoyed, entered the city, and being met by the prefect, was seized, bound, and conducted before the tyrant, who having passed sentence upon him, he was immediately put to death; for it was a law of this wicked king, that whoever was not at his labour before sun-rising should be beheaded in the citadel. In the meantime, St. Germanus, with his attendants, waited the whole day before the gate, without obtaining admission to the tyrant.

§ 34. The man above-mentioned, however, remained

with them. "Take care," said St. Germanus to him, "that none of your friends remain this night within these walls." Upon this he hastily entered the city, brought out his nine sons, and with them retired to the house where he had exercised such generous hospitality. Here St. Germanus ordered them to continue, fasting; and when the gates were shut, "Watch," said he, "and whatever shall happen in the citadel, turn not thither your eyes; but pray without ceasing, and invoke the protection of the true God." And, behold, early in the night, fire fell from heaven, and burnt the city, together with all those who were with the tyrant, so that not one escaped; and that citadel has never been rebuilt even to this day.

§ 35. The following day, the hospitable man who had been converted by the preaching of St. Germanus, was baptized, with his sons, and all the inhabitants of that part of the country; and St. Germanus blessed him, saying, "a king shall not be wanting of thy seed for ever." The name of this person is Catel Drunluc: "from henceforward thou shalt be a king all the days of thy life." Thus was fulfilled the prophecy of the Psalmist—"He raiseth up the poor out of the dust, and lifteth up the needy out of the dunghill." And agreeably to the prediction of St. Germanus, from a servant he became a king: all his sons were kings, and from their offspring the whole country of Powys has been governed to this day.

§ 36. After the Saxons had continued some time in the island of Tanet, Vortigern promised to supply them with clothing and provision, on condition they would engage to fight against the enemies of his country. But the barbarians having greatly increased in number, the Britons became incapable of fulfilling their engagement; and when the Saxons, according to the promise they had received, claimed a supply of provisions and clothing, the Britons replied, "Your number is increased; your assist-

V. R. had  
measured  
out their  
camp.

ance is now unnecessary; you may, therefore, return home, for we can no longer support you:" and hereupon they began to devise means of breaking the peace between them.

§ 37. But Hengist, in whom united craft and penetration, perceiving he had to act with an ignorant king, and a fluctuating people, incapable of opposing much resistance, replied to Vortigern, "We are, indeed, few in number; but, if you will give us leave, we will send to our country for an additional number of forces, with whom we will fight for you and your subjects." Vortigern assenting to this proposal, messengers were dispatched to Scythia, where selecting a number of warlike troops, they returned with sixteen vessels, bringing with them the beautiful daughter of Hengist. And now the Saxon chief prepared an entertainment, to which he invited the king, his officers, and Ceretic, his interpreter, having previously enjoined his daughter to serve them so profusely with wine and ale, that they might soon become intoxicated. This plan succeeded; and Vortigern, at the instigation of the devil, and enamoured with the beauty of the damsel, demanded her, through the medium of his interpreter, of the father, promising to give for her whatever he should ask. Then Hengist, who had already consulted with the elders who attended him of the Oghgul race, demanded for his daughter the province, called in English, Centland, in British, Ceint. This cession was made without the knowledge of the regulus, who then reigned in Kent, and who experienced no inconsiderable share of grief, from seeing his kingdom thus clandestinely, fraudulently, and imprudently resigned to foreigners. Thus the maid was delivered up to the king, who slept with her, and loved her exceedingly.

Some MSS.  
add 'even to  
the half of  
his king-  
dom.'

Guoyrancgo-  
nus is the  
word in the  
original, ge-  
nerally sup-  
posed to  
mean as here  
translated.

§ 38. Hengist, after this, said to Vortigern, "I will be to you both a father and an adviser; despise not my counsels, and you shall have no reason to fear being

conquered by any man or any nation whatever; for the people of my country are strong, warlike, and robust: if you approve, I will send for my son and his brother, both valiant men, who at my invitation will fight against the Scots, and you can give them the countries in the north, near the wall called Guaul." The incautious sovereign having assented to this, Oetha and Ebissa arrived with forty ships. In these they sailed round the country of the Picts, laid waste the Orkneys, and took possession of many regions, even to the Pictish confines.

But Hengist continued, by degrees, sending for ships from his own country; so that some islands whence they came were left without inhabitants; and whilst his people were increasing in power and number, they came to the above-named province of Kent.

The MSS. add, 'beyond the Frenesic (or Fresic) sea.'

V. R. city.

§ 39. In the meantime, Vortigern, as if desirous of adding to the evils he had already occasioned, married his own daughter, by whom he had a son. When this was made known to St. Germanus, he came, with all the British clergy, to reprove him; and whilst a numerous assembly of the ecclesiastics and laity were in consultation, the weak king ordered his daughter to appear before them, and in the presence of all to present her son to St. Germanus, and declare that he was the father of the child. The immodest woman obeyed; and St. Germanus taking the child, said, "I will be a father to you, my son; nor will I dismiss you till a razor, scissors, and comb, are given to me, and it is allowed you to give them to your carnal father." The child obeyed St. Germanus, and going to his father, Vortigern, said to him, "Thou art my father, shave, and cut the hair of my head."

V. R. 'immodest' is omitted in the MSS.

V. R. unless.

The king blushed, and was silent; and, without replying to the child, arose in great anger, and fled from the presence of St. Germanus, execrated and condemned by the whole synod.

§ 40. But soon after calling together his twelve wise

V. R. you shall find a fortified city in which you may defend yourself.

Supposed to be Snowdon.

men, to consult what was to be done, they said to him, "Retire to the remote boundaries of your kingdom; there build and fortify a city to defend yourself, for the people you have received are treacherous; they are seeking to subdue you by stratagem, and, even during your life, to seize upon all the countries subject to your power, how much more will they attempt after your death!" The king, pleased with this advice, departed with his wise men, and travelled through many parts of his territories, in search of a place convenient for the purpose of building a citadel. Having, to no purpose, travelled far and wide, they came at length to a province called Guenet; and having surveyed the mountains of Heremus, they discovered, on the summit of one of them, a situation adapted to the construction of a citadel. Upon this, the wise men said to the king, "Build here a city; for, in this place, it will ever be secure against the barbarians." Then the king sent for artificers, carpenters, stone-masons, and collected all the materials requisite to building; but the whole of these disappeared in one night, so that nothing remained of what had been provided for the constructing of the citadel. Materials were, therefore, from all parts, procured a second and third time, and again vanished as before, leaving and rendering every effort ineffectual. Vortigern inquired of his wise men the cause of this opposition to his undertaking, and of so much useless expense of labour? They replied, "You must find a child born without a father, put him to death, and sprinkle with his blood the ground on which the citadel is to be built, or you will never accomplish your purpose."

Supposed to be Bassalig in Monmouthshire.

§ 41. In consequence of this reply, the king sent messengers throughout Britain, in search of a child born without a father. After having inquired in all the provinces, they came to the field of Ælecti, in the district of Glevesing, where a party of boys were playing at ball.

And two of them quarrelling, one said to the other, "O boy without a father, no good will ever happen to you." Upon this, the messengers diligently inquired of the mother and the other boys, whether he had had a father? Which his mother denied, saying, "In what manner he was conceived I know not, for I have never had intercourse with any man;" and then she solemnly affirmed that he had no mortal father. The boy was, therefore, led away, and conducted before Vortigern the king.

§ 42. A meeting took place the next day, for the purpose of putting him to death. Then the boy said to the king, "Why have your servants brought me hither?" "That you may be put to death," replied the king; "and that the ground on which my citadel is to stand may be sprinkled with your blood, without which I shall be unable to build it." "Who," said the boy, "instructed you to do this?" "My wise men," answered the king. "Order them hither," returned the boy; this being complied with, he thus questioned them: "By what means was it revealed to you that this citadel could not be built, unless the spot were previously sprinkled with my blood? Speak without disguise, and declare who discovered me to you:" then turning to the king, "I will soon," said he, "unfold to you every thing; but I desire to question your wise men, and wish them to disclose to you what is hidden under this pavement:" they acknowledging their ignorance, "there is," said he, "a pool; come and dig:" they did so, and found the pool. "Now," continued he, "tell me what is in it;" but they were ashamed, and made no reply. "I," said the boy, "can discover it to you: there are two vases in the pool;" they examined, and found it so: continuing his questions, "What is in the vases?" they were silent: "there is a tent in them," said the boy; "separate them, and you shall find it so:" this being done by the king's command,

V. R. one of  
them.

there was found in them a folded tent. The boy, going on with his questions, asked the wise men what was in it? But they not knowing what to reply, "There are," said he, "two serpents, one white and the other red; unfold the tent:" they obeyed, and two sleeping serpents were discovered: "consider attentively," said the boy, "what they are doing." The serpents began to struggle with each other; and the white one, raising himself up, threw down the other into the middle of the tent, and sometimes drove him to the edge of it; and this was repeated thrice. At length the red one, apparently the weaker of the two, recovering his strength, expelled the white one from the tent; and the latter being pursued through the pool by the red one, disappeared. Then the boy, asking the wise men what was signified by this wonderful omen, and they expressing their ignorance, he said to the king, "I will now unfold to you the meaning of this mystery. The pool is the emblem of this world, and the tent that of your kingdom: the two serpents are two dragons; the red serpent is your dragon, but the white serpent is the dragon of the people who occupy several provinces and districts of Britain, even almost from sea to sea: at length, however, our people shall rise and drive away the Saxon race from beyond the sea, whence they originally came; but do you depart from this place, where you are not permitted to erect a citadel; I, to whom fate has allotted this mansion, shall remain here; whilst to you it is incumbent to seek other provinces, where you may build a fortress." "What is your name?" asked the king; "I am called Ambros (in British Embresguletic)," returned the boy; and in answer to the king's question, "What is your origin?" he replied, "A Roman consul was my father."

Then the king assigned him that city, with all the western provinces of Britain; and departing with his wise men to the sinistral district, he arrived in the

region named Gueneri, where he built a city, which, according to his name, was called Cair Guorthegirn.

§ 43. At length Guorthemer, the son of Vortimer, valiantly fought against Hengist, Horsa, and his people; drove them to the isle of Tanet, and thrice enclosed them within it, and beset them on the western side.

The Saxons now dispatched deputies to Germany to solicit large reinforcements, and an additional number of ships: having obtained these, they fought against the kings and princes of Britain, and sometimes extended their boundaries by victory, and sometimes were conquered and driven back.

§ 44. Four times did Guorthemer valorously encounter the enemy; the first has been mentioned, the second was upon the river Derwent, the third at the Ford, in their language called Episford, though in ours Set thirgabail, there Horsus fell, and Catigirn, the son of Vortigern; the fourth battle he fought, was near the stone on the shore of the Gallic Sea, where the Saxons being defeated, fled to their ships.

V. R. Rit  
Herbagail.

V. R. 'the  
stone of Ti-  
tulus,'  
thought to  
be Stonar in  
Kent.

After a short interval Guorthemer died; before his decease, anxious for the future prosperity of his country, he charged his friends to inter his body at the entrance of the Saxon port, viz. upon the rock where the Saxons first landed; "for though," said he, "they may inhabit other parts of Britain, yet if you follow my commands, they will never remain in this island." They imprudently disobeyed this last injunction, and neglected to bury him where he had appointed.

V. R. fled  
like women.

§ 45. After this, the barbarians became firmly incorporated, and were assisted by foreign pagans; for Vortigern was their friend, on account of the daughter of Hengist, whom he so much loved, that no one durst fight against him—in the mean time they soothed the imprudent king, and whilst practising every appearance of fondness, were plotting with his enemies. And let him that reads understand, that the Saxons were victorious,

V. R. return-  
ed in a large  
body.

V. R. of his  
wife, and no  
one was able  
manfully to  
drive them  
off because  
they had oc-  
cupied Bri-  
tain not from  
their own va-  
lour, but by  
God's per-  
mission.

and ruled Britain, not from their superior prowess, but on account of the great sins of the Britons: God so permitting it.

V. R. The Lord does as he pleases, and rules and governs all nations.

For what wise man will resist the wholesome counsel of God? The Almighty is the King of kings, and the Lord of lords, ruling and judging every one, according to his own pleasure.

After the death of Vortimer, Hengist being strengthened by new accessions, collected his ships, and calling his leaders together, consulted by what stratagem they might overcome Vortigern and his army; with insidious intention they sent messengers to the king, with offers of peace and perpetual friendship; unsuspecting of treachery, the monarch, after advising with his elders, accepted the proposals.

The VV. RR. of this section are too numerous to be inserted.

§ 46. Hengist, under pretence of ratifying the treaty, prepared an entertainment, to which he invited the king, the nobles, and military officers, in number about three hundred; speciously concealing his wicked intention, he ordered three hundred Saxons to conceal each a knife under his feet, and to mix with the Britons; “and when,” said he, “they are sufficiently inebriated, &c. cry out ‘Nimader sexa,’ then let each draw his knife, and kill his man; but spare the king, on account of his marriage with my daughter, for it is better that he should be ransomed than killed.”

The king, with his company, appeared at the feast; and mixing with the Saxons, who, whilst they spoke peace with their tongues, cherished treachery in their hearts, each man was placed next his enemy.

After they had eaten and drunk, and were much intoxicated, Hengist suddenly vociferated “Nimader sexa!” and instantly his adherents drew their knives, and rushing upon the Britons, each slew him that sat next to him, and there were slain three hundred of the nobles of Vortigern. The king being a captive, purchased his redemption, by delivering up the three pro-

vinces of East, South, and Middle Sex, besides other districts at the option of his betrayers.

§ 47. St. Germanus admonished Vortigern to turn to the true God, and abstain from all unlawful intercourse with his daughter; but the unhappy wretch fled for refuge to the province Gurthegoirnaim, so called from his own name, where he concealed himself with his wives: but St. Germanus followed him with all the British clergy, and upon a rock prayed for his sins during forty days and forty nights.

The blessed man was unanimously chosen commander against the Saxons. And then, not by the clang of trumpets, but by praying, singing hallelujah, and by the cries of the army to God, the enemies were routed, and driven even to the sea.

V. R. This paragraph is omitted in the MSS.

Again Vortigern ignominiously fled from St. Germanus to the kingdom of the Dimetæ, where, on the river Tivis, he built a castle, which he named Cair Guothergirn. The saint, as usual, followed him there, and with his clergy fasted and prayed to the Lord three days, and as many nights. On the third night, at the third hour, fire fell suddenly from heaven, and totally burnt the castle. Vortigern, the daughter of Hengist, his other wives, and all the inhabitants, both men and women, miserably perished: such was the end of this unhappy king, as we find written in the life of St. Germanus.

§ 48. Others assure us, that being hated by all the people of Britain, for having received the Saxons, and being publicly charged by St. Germanus and the clergy in the sight of God, he betook himself to flight; and that, deserted and a wanderer, he sought a place of refuge, till broken-hearted, he made an ignominious end.

Some accounts state, that the earth opened and swallowed him up, on the night his castle was burnt; as no remains were discovered the following morning, either of him, or of those who were burnt with him.

He had three sons : the eldest was Vortimer, who, as we have seen, fought four times against the Saxons, and put them to flight ; the second Cathegirn, who was slain in the same battle with Horsus ; the third was Pascent, who reigned in the two provinces Buelt and Guorthegirnaim, after the death of his father. These were granted him by Ambrosius, who was the great king among the kings of Britain. The fourth was Faustus, born of an incestuous marriage with his daughter, who was brought up and educated by St. Germanus. He built a large monastery on the banks of the river Renis, called after his name, and which remains to the present period.

V. R. omitted in the MSS.

V. R. The MSS. add 'and he had one daughter, who was the mother of Saint Faustus.'

V. R. 'two provinces, Buelt and Guorthegirniaun.'

§ 49. This is the genealogy of Vortigern, which goes back to Fernmail, who reigned in the kingdom of Guorthegirnaim, and was the son of Teudor ; Teudor was the son of Pascent ; Pascent of Guoidcant ; Guoidcant of Moriud ; Moriud of Eltat ; Eltat of Eldoc ; Eldoc of Paul ; Paul of Meuprit ; Meuprit of Braciat ; Braciat of Pascent ; Pascent of Guorthegirn ; Guorthegirn of Guortheneu ; Guortheneu of Guitaul ; Guitaul of Guitolion ; Guitolion of Gloiuda ; Gloiuda of Paulmerion, who built Gloiuda, a great city upon the banks of the river Severn, and in British is called Cair Gloui, in Saxon, Gloucester. Enough has been said of Vortigern.

§ 50. St. Germanus, after his death, returned into his own country.

V. R. All this to the word 'Amen,' in other MSS. is placed after the legend of St. Patrick.

At that time, the Saxons greatly increased in Britain, both in strength and numbers. And Oetha, after the death of his father Hengist, came from the sinistral part of the island to the kingdom of Kent, and from him have proceeded all the kings of that province, to the present period.

Then it was, that the magnanimous Arthur, with all the kings and military force of Britain, fought against the Saxons. And though there were many more noble than himself, yet he was twelve times chosen their com-

mander, and was as often conqueror. The first battle in which he was engaged, was the mouth of the river Glein. The second, third, fourth, and fifth, were on another river, by the Britons called Duglas, in the region Linnuis. The sixth, on the river Lussas. The seventh in the wood Celidon, which the Britons call Cacoit Celidon. The eighth was near Guinnion castle, where Arthur bore the image of the Holy Virgin, mother of God, upon his shoulders, and through the power of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the holy Mary, put the Saxons to flight, and pursued them the whole day with great slaughter. The ninth was at the city of Leogis, which is called Cair Lion. The tenth was on the banks of the river Trat Treuroit. The eleventh was on the mountain Breguoin, which we call Cat Bregion. The twelfth was a most severe contest, when Arthur penetrated to the hill of Badon. In this engagement, nine hundred and forty fell by his hand alone, no one but the Lord affording him assistance. In all these engagements the Britons were successful. For no strength can avail against the will of the Almighty.

The more the Saxons were vanquished, the more they sought for new supplies of Saxons from Germany; so that kings, commanders, and military bands were invited over from almost every province. And this practice they continued till the reign of Ida, who was the son of Eobba, he, of the Saxon race, was the first king in Bernech, and in Cair Affrauc.

When Gratian *Æquantius* was consul in Rome, because then the whole world was governed by the Roman consuls, the Saxons were received by Vortigern in the year of our Lord four hundred and forty-seven, and to the year in which we now write, five hundred and forty-seven. And whosoever shall read herein may receive instruction, the Lord Jesus Christ affording assistance,

who, co-eternal with the Father and the Holy Ghost, lives and reigns for ever and ever. Amen.

In those days Saint Patrick was a captive among the Scots. His master's name was Milchu, to whom he was a swineherd for seven years. When he had attained the age of seventeen, he gave him his liberty. By the divine impulse, he applied himself to reading of the Scriptures, and afterwards went to Rome, where, replenished with the Holy Spirit, he continued a great while, studying the sacred mysteries of those writings. During his continuance there, Palladius, the first bishop, was sent by Pope Celestinus to convert the Scots. But tempests and signs from God prevented his landing, for no one can arrive in any country, except it be allowed from above; altering therefore his course from Ireland, he came to Britain and died in the land of the Picts.

§ 51. The death of Palladius being known, the Roman patricians, Theodosius and Valentinianus then reigning, Pope Celestinus sent Patrick to convert the Scots to the faith of the Holy Trinity; Victor, the angel of God, accompanying, admonishing, and assisting him, and also the Bishop Germanus.

Germanus then sent the ancient Segerus with him as a venerable and praiseworthy bishop, to King Matheus, who lived near, and who had prescience of what was to happen; he was consecrated bishop in the reign of that king by the holy pontiff, assuming the name of Patrick, having hitherto been known by that of Mauun; Auxilius, Iserminus, and other brothers were ordained with him to inferior degrees.

§ 52. Having distributed benedictions, and perfected all in the name of the Holy Trinity, he embarked on the sea which is between the Gauls and the Britons; and after a quick passage arrived in Britain, where he preached for some time. Every necessary preparation

being made, and the angel giving him warning, he came to the Irish Sea. And having filled the ship with foreign gifts and spiritual treasures, by the permission of God he arrived in Ireland, where he baptized and preached.

§ 53. From the beginning of the world, to the fifth year of King Logiore, when the Irish were baptized, and faith in the unity of the individual Trinity was published to them, are five thousand three hundred and thirty years.

§ 54. Saint Patrick taught the gospel in foreign nations for the space of forty years. Endued with apostolical powers, he gave sight to the blind, cleansed the lepers, gave hearing to the deaf, cast out devils, raised nine from the dead, redeemed many captives of both sexes at his own charge, and set them free in the name of the Holy Trinity. He taught the servants of God, and he wrote three hundred and sixty-five canonical and other books relating to the Catholic Faith. He founded as many churches, and consecrated the same number of bishops, strengthening them with the Holy Ghost. He ordained three thousand Presbyters; and converted and baptized twelve thousand persons in the province of Connaught. And, in one day baptized seven kings, who were the seven sons of Amolgith. He continued fasting forty days and nights, on the summit of the mountain Eli, that is Cruachangeli; and preferred three petitions to God for the Irish, that had embraced the faith. The Scots say, the first was, that he would receive every repenting sinner, even at the latest extremity of life; the second, that they should never be exterminated by barbarians; and the third, that as Ireland will be overflowed with water, seven years before the coming of our Lord to judge the quick and the dead, the crimes of the people might be washed away through his intercession, and their souls purified at the last day. He gave the people his benediction from the upper part of the moun-

V. R. omitted in some MSS.

V. R. that no Irishman may be alive on the day of judgment, because they will be destroyed seven years before in honour of St. Patrick.

tain, and going up higher, that he might pray for them, and that if it pleased God, he might see the effects of his labours, there appeared to him an innumerable flock of birds of many colours, signifying the number of holy persons of both sexes of the Irish nation, who should come to him as their apostle at the day of judgment, to be presented before the tribunal of Christ. After a life spent in the active exertion of good to mankind, St. Patrick, in a healthy old age, passed from this world to the Lord, and changing this life for a better, with the saints and elect of God he rejoices for evermore.

§ 55. Saint Patrick resembled Moses in four particulars. The angel spoke to him in the burning bush. He fasted forty days and forty nights upon the mountain. He attained the period of one hundred and twenty years. No one knows his sepulchre, nor where he was buried; sixteen years he was in captivity. In his twenty-fifth year, he was consecrated bishop by King Matheus, and he was eighty-five years the apostle of the Irish. It might be profitable to treat more at large of the life of this saint, but it is now time to conclude this epitome of his labours.

Here ends  
Mr. Gunn's  
MS.

Added by a  
transcriber.

[Here endeth the life of the holy bishop, Saint Patrick.]

(After this, the MSS. give as § 56, the legend of King Arthur, which in this edition occurs in § 50.)

Genealogy of  
the kings of  
Bernicia.

§ 57. Woden begat Beldeg, who begat Beornec, who begat Gechbrond, who begat Alnson, who begat Inguec, who begat Ædibrith, who begat Ossa, who begat Eobba, who begat Ida. But Ida had twelve sons, Adda, Ældric, Decdric, Edric, Deothere, Osmer, and one queen, Bearnoch, Ealric, Ealdric, he begat Ælfret: the same is Ældfred Flesaur. For he also had seven sons, Anfrid, Osguald, Osbiu, Osguid, Osgudu, Oslapf, Offa. Osguid begat Alcfrid, Ælfguin and Æchfird. Echgfrid is he who made war against his cousin Birdei, king of the Picts, and he fell therein with all the strength of

This genealogy is very  
obscure.

his army, and the Picts with their king gained the victory: and the Saxons never again reduced the Picts so as to exact tribute from them. Since the time of this war it is called Gueithlin Garan.

V. R. Gueith  
linii.

But Osguid had two wives, Riemmelth, the daughter of Royth, son of Rum; and Eanfled, the daughter of Eadguin, son of Alli.

#### THE GENEALOGY OF THE KINGS OF KENT.

§ 58. Hengist begat Octha, who begat Ossa, who begat Eormoric, who begat Ealdbert, who begat Ealdbald, who begat Ercunbert, who begat Ecgberth.

These titles  
are not part  
of the origi-  
nal work, but  
added in the  
MSS. by a  
later hand.

#### THE ORIGIN OF THE KINGS OF EAST-ANGLIA.

§ 59. Woden begat Casser, who begat Titinon, who begat Trigil, who begat Rodmunt, who begat Rippa, who begat Guillem Guecha, who was the first king of the East Angles. Guecha begat Guffa, who begat Tydil, who begat Ecnî, who begat Edric, who begat Aldul, who begat Elric.

#### THE GENEALOGY OF THE MERCIANS.

§ 60. Woden begat Guedolgeat, who begat Gueagon, who begat Guithleg, who begat Guerdmund, who begat Offa, who begat Ongen, who begat Eamer, who begat Pubba. This Pubba had twelve sons, of whom two are better known to me than the others, that is Penda and Eua. Eadlit is the son of Pantha, Penda, son of Pubba, Ealdbald, son of Alguing, son of Eua, son of Penda, son of Pubba. Ecgfrid, son of Offa, son of Duminfert, son of Eandulf, son of Ossulf, son of Eua, son of Pubba.

#### THE KINGS OF THE DEIRI.

§ 61. Woden begat Beldeyg, Brond begat Siggarr, who begat Sebald, who begat Zegulf, who begat Scemil,

who first separated Deur from Birneich (*Deira from Bernicia*). Scemil begat Sguerthing, who begat Giulgis, who begat Usfrea, who begat Iffi, who begat Ulli, Ædguin, Osfrid and Eadfird. There were two sons of Edguin, who fell with him in battle at Meicen, and the kingdom was never renewed in his family, because not one of his race escaped from that war; but all were slain with him by the army of Catguollaunus, king of the Guendota. Osguid begat Ecgfrid, the same is Ailguin, who begat Oslach, who begat Alhun, who begat Adlsing, who begat Echun, who begat Oslaph. Ida begat Eadric, who begat Ecgulf, who begat Liodguald, who begat Æta, the same is Glinmaur, who begat Eadbyrth and Ecgbirth, who was the first bishop of their nation.

V. R. In  
Eicen. See  
Bede's Eccl.  
H. II. 20.

Ida, the son of Eobba, possessed countries on the left-hand side of Britain, *i. e.* of the Humbrian sea, and reigned twelve years, and anointed Dinguayrði Guurthberneich.

§ 62. Then Dutigirn at that time fought bravely against the nation of the Angles. At that time, Talhærn Cataguen was famed for poetry, and Neirin, and Taliessin and Bluchbard, and Cian, who is called Guenith Guaut, were all famous at the same time in British poetry.

The great king, Mailcun, reigned among the Britons, *i. e.* in the district of Guenedota, because his great-great-grandfather, Cunedag, with his twelve sons, had come before from the left-hand part, *i. e.* from the country which is called Manau Gustodin, one hundred and forty-six years before Mailcun reigned, and expelled the Scots with much slaughter from those countries, and they never returned again to inhabit them.

§ 63. Adda, son of Ida, reigned eight years; Ædric, son of Adda, reigned four years. Deoric, son of Ida, reigned seven years. Friodolguald reigned six years. In whose time the kingdom of Kent, by the mission of Gregory, received baptism. Hussa reigned seven years.

Against him fought four kings, Urbgen, and Riderchen, and Guallanc, and Morcant. Deodric fought bravely, together with his sons, against that Urbgen. But at that time sometimes the enemy and sometimes our countrymen were defeated, and he shut them up three days and three nights in the island of Metcaud; and whilst he was on an expedition he was murdered, at the instance of Morcant, out of envy, because he possessed so much superiority over all the kings in military science. Eadfered Flesaur's reign lasted twelve years in Bernicia, and twelve others in Deira, and he gave to his wife Bebbab the town of Dinguoaroy, which from her is called Bebbanburg.

Eoguin, son of Alli, reigned seventeen years, seized on Elmet, and expelled Certic, its king. Eanfled, his daughter, received baptism, on the twelfth day after Pentecost, with all her followers, both men and women. The following Easter Eadguin himself received baptism, and twelve thousand of his subjects with him. If any one wishes to know who baptized them, it was Rum Map Urbgen: he was engaged forty days in baptizing all classes of the Saxons, and by his preaching many believed on Christ.

§ 64. Oswald, son of Eadfred, reigned nine years; the same is Oswald Lamnguin; he slew Catgublaun, king of Guenedot, in the battle of Catscaul, with much loss to his own army. Osguid, son of Eadlfrid, reigned twenty-eight years and six months. During his reign, there was a dreadful mortality among his subjects, when Catgualart was king among the Britons, succeeding his father, and he himself died amongst the rest. He slew Pantha in the field of Gai, and now took place the slaughter of Gai Campi, and the kings of the Britons, who went out with Pantha on the expedition as far as the city of Judeu, were slain.

V. R. Giti  
campi.

V. R. Nideu.

§ 65. Then Osguid restored all the wealth, which was with him in the city, to Penda; who distributed it

among the kings of the Britons, that is, Atbret Judeu. But Catgabail alone, king of Guenedot, rising up in the night, escaped, together with his army, wherefore he was called Catgabail Catguommed. Ecgfrid, son of Osbiu, reigned nine years. In his time the holy bishop Cuthbert died in the island of Medcaut. It was he who made war against the Picts, and was by them slain.

Pend, son of Pybba, reigned ten years; he first separated the kingdom of Mercia from that of the North-men, and slew by treachery Onna, king of the East Anglians, and St. Oswald, king of the North-men. He fought the battle of Cocboy, in which fell Eoua, son of Pippa, his brother, king of the Mercians, and Oswald, king of the North-men, and he gained the victory by diabolical agency. He was not baptized, and never believed in God.

§ 66. From the beginning of the world to Constantinus and Rufus, are found to be five thousand six hundred and fifty-eight years.

Also from the two consuls, Rufus and Rubelius, to the Consul Stilicho, are three hundred and seventy-three years.

Also from Stilicho to Valentinian, son of Placida, and the reign of Vortigern, are twenty-eight years.

And from the reign of Vortigern to the quarrel between Guitolinus and Ambrosius, are twelve years, which is Guoloppum, that is Catguoloph. Vortigern reigned in Britain when Theodosius and Valentinian were consuls, and in the fourth year of his reign the Saxons came to Britain; in the consulship of Felix and Taurus, in the four hundredth year from the incarnation of our Lord Jesus Christ.

From the year in which the Saxons came into Britain, and were received by Vortigern, to the time of Decius and Valerian, are sixty-nine years.

## A P P E N D I X.



I. THE COMMENCEMENT OF MR. GUNN'S MS. IN THE ORIGINAL LATIN, SHOWING ITS VARIATIONS FROM THE COMMON READING, AND ALSO THE MODE OF SPELLING, PUNCTUATION, &c.

ABADAM. usq: addiluvium: anni ·II·XLII<sup>m</sup>; Adiluvio usq: adhabraham: anni ·DCCCCXLII. Abhabraham: usq: admoysen: anni DC: Amoyse usque adsalomonem et primam aedificationem templi: anni ·CCCC·LXXXVIII; A solomone usq: transmigrationem templi: quae sub Legendum forse reaedificationem. dario rege persarum facta est ·anni ·DXII· computantur: Porro adario usq: adpredicationem domini nostri iesu christi: et usque ad XV· annum imperii imperatoris tiberii explentur anni ·DXLVIII; Ita simul fiunt ab adam usque adpredicationem christi: et XV· annum imperii imperatoris tiberii V·CC·XXVIII<sup>m</sup>; a passione christi peracti sunt anni: DCCCC·XLVI; Abincarnatione autem eius sunt anni DCCCC·LXXVI<sup>us</sup> et V<sup>us</sup> annus eadmundi regis anglorum. Prima igitur aetas mundi abadam usque ad noe; Secunda, anoe usq: adhabraham. Tertia, ab abraham: usque addavid; quarta, adavid: usque addanihelem; Quinta aetas: usq: adiohannem baptistam. Sexta aiohne usq: adiuditium in quo dominus noster iesus christus veniet iudicare vivos ac mortuos et seculum per ignem;

Primus iulius· Secundus claudius· Tertius Severus.

Quartus Carinus· Quintus Constantius· Sextus maximus ; Septimus maximianus· Octavus alius severus aequantius. Nonus Constantius, INCIPIT ISTORIA BRITTONUM EDITA AB ANACHORETA MARCO EIUSDEM GENTIS SCTO EPO· BRITANNIA INSULA ; a quodam bruto consule romano dicta est ; haec consurgit ab africo boreali ad occidentem <sup>octaganec</sup> versa : DCCC· in longitudine milium ? CC· <sup>te</sup> in latitudine spatium habet ? et in ea sunt ·XXXIII· Civitates ·I· Cair ebrauc ·II· Cair ceint ·III· Cair gurcoc ·III· Cair guor thegern ·V· Cair gustaint ·VI· Cair guoranegon ·VII· Cair segeint ·VIII· Cair guin truis ·IX· Cair merdin ·X· Cair peris ·XI· Cair lion ·XII· Cair mencipit ·XIII· Cair caratauc ·XIII· Cair ceri ·XV· Cair gloui XVI· Cair luilid ·XVII· Cair graut ·XVIII· Cair daun XVIII· Cair britoc ·XX· Cair meguaid ·XXI· Cair mauiguid ·XXII· Cair ligion ·XXIII· Cair guent ·XXIII· Cair collon ·XXV· Cair londein ·XXVI· Cair guorcon ·XXVII· Cair lerion ·XXVIII· Cair draht hou ·XXVIII· Cair pensauelcoin ·XXX· Cair teim ·XXXI· Cair urnahc ·XXXII· Cair celemion ·XXXIII· Cair loit coit.

Haec sunt nomina antiquarum civitatum brittanniæ insulæ et innumerabilia promontoria. Cum innumerabilibus castellis ex latere et lapidibus fabricatis ; et in ea habitant <sup>or</sup> IIII. gentes. Scotti. Picti. Saxones. et antiqui brittones ; Tres magnas insulas habet ; quarum una australis vergit contra armoricas. et vocatur insula guerth. Secunda sita est in umbilico maris inter hiberniam et bryttaniam ; et nominatur eubonia vel manau. Tertia est in extremo boreali limite orbis bryttaniæ ultra pictos et vocatur orch ; Sic in proverbio dicitur antiquo quando de iudicibus et regibus sermo fit ; iudicavit bryt-

tanniam : cum tribus insulis ; Sunt in ea flumina multa : quae confluunt ad omnes partes eius . idest ad orientem et occidentem : ad meridiem et septentrionem ; sunt tamen duo flumina praeclariora ceteris fluminibus : tamensis et sabrina ; quasi duo brachia bryttanniae : per quae olim rates vehebantur ad deportandas divitias : pro causa negotiationis ; Bryttones autem olim impleverunt eam : et a mari usque ad mare judicaverunt ; Siquis scire voluerit quo tempore post diluvium habitata est haec insula : hoc experimentum bifarie inveni ; In annalibus autem romanorum scriptum est ;

De romanis vero et graecis trahunt ethimologiam : id est de matre Lavina filia latini regis Italiae : et progenie silvani filii inahi filii dardani ; Idem dardanus filius saturni regis grecorum perrexit ad partem asiae : et ille aedificavit urbem troie ; Dardanus pater troi : troius pater priami . et anchisae : Anchises pater eneae . Eneas pater ascani et silvii : silvius filius aeneae et Laviniae filiae regis italiae . Et de stirpe filii eneae et Laviniae orti sunt Remus et romulus . duo filii reginae sanctimonialis reae : id est iliae . scilicet remus et romus : qui fecerunt romam . Brutus consul fuit in roma imperii romani quando expugnavit hispaniam . ac detraxit eam in servitatem rome et postea tenuit bryttanniam insulam : quam habitabant bryttones romanorum filii : olim silvio posthumo orti ; Ideo dicitur posthumus : quia post mortem aeneae patris eius natus est . et fuit mater eius lavina super clandestina . quando pregnans erat ; Ideo silvius dictus est : quia in silva natus est ; ideo silvatici dicti sunt romani reges : et bryttones qui de eo nati sunt ; sed a bruto bryttones : et de bruti stirpe surrexerunt ;

Aeneas igitur post troianum bellum cum ascano filio suo venit ad italiam . et superato turno Labinam filiam latini regis italiae in coniugium : filii fauni : filii pici : filii saturni : et post mortem latini : aeneas regnum obtinuit Romanorum ; Ascanius autem albam condidit :

et postea uxorem duxit: Et peperit labina aeneae filium? nomine silvium; Ascanius autem duxit uxorem quae concipiens gravida facta est; Et nuntiatum est aeneae quod nurus sua gravida erat pregnans: et misit ad ascanium filium suum. Ut mitteret magum suum ad considerandum uxorem suam: ut exploraret quid haberet in utero masculum vel feminam; Et venit magus: consideravit uxorem: et dixit ascanio aeneae filio quod masculum haberet in utero mulier; *Et filius esset omnium Hytalarum fortissimus amabilis omnibus hominibus*; Propter hanc vaticinationem occisus est magus ab ascanio; sic evenit: in nativitate illius mulier (vel mater) mortua est: et nutritus est filius. vocatumque est nomen eius bruto (vel britto); Post multum vero intervallum iuxta vaticinationem magi dum ipse luderet cum pueris: *omnes superabat. ut omnium dominus videretur, Idcirco autem invidia* expulsus est ab italia, et armis fuit; Et pervenit ad insulas maris terreni: et expulsus est inde causa occisionis turni. quem aeneas occidit; Et pervenit usque ad gallos: et ibi condidit civitatem torronorum: quae vocatur turnis; Et postea ad istam pervenit insulam: quae a nomine suo nomen accepit. id est brittannia: et implevit eam cum suo genere et habitavit in ea; Ab illo autem tempore habitata est bryttania usque in hodiernum diem; Aeneas autem regnavit tribus annis apud latinos: ascanius regnavit annis ·XXX·III<sup>bus</sup>; Post quem silvius regnavit annis ·XII· posthumus annis ·XXX·VIII: A quo albanorum reges silvii appellati sunt; Cuius frater erat bruto; Quando vero regnabat bruto in bryttania: heli sacerdos iudicabat in israhel; Et tunc archa testamenti ab alienigenis possidebatur; Posthumus (vel silvius) autem frater eius: apud latinos regnabat.

Deest, *accepit*, aut quid simile.

## II. HANES TALIESIN, OR THE HISTORY OF TALIESIN.

THE primary domestic bard  
 Am I to Elphin,  
 And my original country  
 Is the region of Cherubims.  
 Joannes the divine  
 Called me Merddin,  
 At length every king  
 Will call me Taliesin.  
 I was full nine months  
 In the womb of mother Cyridwen ;  
 I was little Gwion heretofore,  
 Taliesin am I now.  
 I was with my Lord  
 In the superior state,  
 When Lucifer did fall  
 To the infernal deep.  
 I have borne a banner  
 Before Alexander :  
 I know the names of the stars  
 From the north to Auster.  
 I have been in the circle of Gwdion  
 Tetragrammaton ;  
 I conducted Hean  
 To the depth of Ebron vale,  
 I was in Canaan  
 When Absalom was slain,  
 I was in the Court of Don  
 Before Gwdion was born,  
 I was an attendant

Venus.

The Galaxy.

The Divine  
spirit.Or Llys Don,  
*i. e.* Cassi-  
opœia.

On Eli and Enoc ;  
 I was on the cross-devoting sentence  
 Of the son of the merciful God.  
 I have been chief keeper  
 Of the work of Nimrod's tower ;  
 I have been three revolutions  
 In the circle of Arianrod.  
 I was in the Ark  
 With Noah and Alpha ;  
 I beheld the destruction  
 Of Sodoma and Gomorra ;  
 I was in Africa  
 Before Rome was built ;  
 I am come here  
 To the remnants of Troia.  
 I was with my Lord  
 In the manger of the she ass ;  
 I strengthened Moses  
 Through the Jordan water.  
 I have been in the firmament  
 With Mary Magdalen ;  
 I have been gifted with genius  
 From the Cauldron of Cyridwen.  
 I have been bard of the harp  
 To Teon of Lochlyn ;  
 I have endured hunger  
 For the son of the Virgin.  
 I have been in White Hill  
 In the court of Cynvelyn,  
 In stocks and fetters,  
 For a year and a day.  
 I have had my abode  
 In the kingdom of the Trinity ;  
 It is not known what is my body,  
 Whether flesh or fish.  
 I have been an instructor  
 To the whole universe ;

The Nor-  
thern Crown.

Denmark.

Tower of  
London.

I shall remain till the day of doom  
On the face of the earth.  
I have been in an agitated seat  
Above the circle of Sidin,  
And that continues revolving  
Between three elements :  
Is it not a wonder to the world,  
That it reflects not a splendor ?

Perhaps Caer  
Sidin, or the  
Zodiac.

[*From Meyrick's History of Cardigan-  
shire, p. 65. 2 vols. London, 1806.*



**JAMES BOHN, 12, KING WILLIAM-ST.**

---

**IMPORTANT BOOKS**

IN

**TOPOGRAPHY, HISTORY, TRAVELS,**

*The Fine Arts, Architecture,*

AND THE

**BELLES LETTRES,**

**AT VERY REDUCED PRICES.**

---

---

WITH AN APPENDIX OF

**NEW PUBLICATIONS.**

---

---

The Books are all quite new, in extra boards, unless otherwise described, and are warranted clean and perfect, as originally published.

**COPIES MAY BE HAD IN VARIOUS BINDINGS.**

---

**12, KING WILLIAM-ST. WEST STRAND.**

# MITFORD'S HISTORY OF GREECE.

---

THE  
HISTORY OF GREECE,

BY  
WILLIAM MITFORD, ESQ.

NEW EDITION, WITH NUMEROUS ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS,  
TO WHICH IS PREFIXED A BRIEF MEMOIR OF THE AUTHOR,

BY HIS BROTHER, LORD REDESDALE,  
REVISED, CORRECTED, AND ILLUSTRATED,  
WITH CHRONOLOGICAL NOTES,

BY W. KING, ESQ.

10 volumes fcap. 8vo. cloth, lettered; published at £2. 10s. 0d.,

**REDUCED TO £2 0 0.**

---

## OPINIONS ON THIS EDITION.

“HIS IS THE BEST HISTORY OF GREECE in any language; and he is, perhaps, the best of all Modern Historians whatsoever.”—BYRON.

“In political and philosophical speculations, and in the illustration of facts, he is far superior to any former writer.”—FYNES CLINTON.

“Mr. Mitford, the last in time, is certainly not the least in merit amongst the Modern Compilers of Grecian Annals. He has brought to his task *acuteness and patient investigation*, and, by the aid of these qualities, he has generally succeeded in unravelling the intricate web of Grecian politics.”—QUARTERLY REVIEW.

---

The only fault ever expressed respecting this History was a carelessness respecting dates. *This has been obviated in the PRESENT EDITION by the introduction of Chronological Notes*, by the Editor, W. King, Esq. It is now, beyond doubt, *the best book on Grecian History*.

---

\*\*\* This Edition is verbatim the same as that published in 8 vols. 8vo., and must not be confounded with the reprint of the earlier volumes of the old edition, continued by an inferior hand, which it has been attempted to pass off as Mitford's History of Greece.

LODGE'S PORTRAITS OF ILLUSTRIOUS PERSONS.

---

PORTRAITS  
 OF  
 ILLUSTRIOUS PERSONS  
 OF  
 GREAT BRITAIN,

Engraved from Authentic Sources, with Biographical Memoirs,

BY EDWARD LODGE, ESQ.

4 VOLS. ROYAL FOLIO, LARGE PAPER, PROOFS ON INDIA PAPER,  
 PUBLISHED AT £182 14 0.—REDUCED TO £45.

ONLY SIX COPIES NOW REMAIN FOR SALE,

---

A COPY, WITH TWENTY CHOICE ENGRAVERS' PROOFS INSERTED,  
*May be had for £55. cost originally £203 14 0.*

---

This Edition, engraved on COPPER PLATES, should not be confounded with those published in imperial 8vo. and 4to. from STEEL PLATES, which, in reality, can only be considered in the light of shadows of this noble work. Of all works published during the Nineteenth century, none have been produced which will bear comparison with the present. The outlay of the spirited proprietors exceeded £40,000; and, in point of accuracy, no book of portraits ever came near the standard of Lodge. It is a concentration of the intellect and true nobility of this country, from the year 1500 to the year 1830, gathered from all the Galleries of the Nobility, which were most liberally thrown open to the publishers of this truly national work.

---

*These copies were the private property of Jos. Harding, Esq.* The work has long been quite out of print, and bearing a premium on its publication price.

# THOMSON'S

## PORTRAITS OF DISTINGUISHED CHARACTERS.

### PHYSIOGNOMICAL PORTRAITS.

ONE HUNDRED DISTINGUISHED CHARACTERS, FROM UNDOUBTED ORIGINALS, ENGRAVED IN THE LINE MANNER, BY COSMO ARMSTRONG, BRAGG, COOK, ENGLEHEART, ENSOM, E. FINDEN, W. FINDEN, PYE, ROBINSON, SHARPE, SMITH, WEDGWOOD, WARREN, WORTHINGTON, AND OTHERS.

*With Biographical Memoirs.*

BY RICHARD THOMSON, ESQ.

TWO VOLUMES, ROYAL QUARTO, LARGE PAPER, WITH PROOFS ON INDIA PAPER,

PUBLISHED AT £21 0 0.—REDUCED TO £4 4 0.

*Half-bound morocco, uncut.*

The following Portraits are contained in these volumes.

#### VOLUME I.

Albert, Prince Aremberg  
H. Van Balen  
Beccadelli  
Cardinal Bentivoglio  
M. Le Blon  
Cardinal Borromeo  
Cardinal F. Borromeo  
T. W. Bosehaert  
Michael-Angelo Buonarroti  
Louis Alexander de Bourbon  
Camoens  
Thos. F. P. of Carignan  
Castiglione  
Philip Champagné  
Charles I  
Captain Cook  
Captain Coram

Corregio  
Craymer  
Oliver Cromwell  
Cromwell, Earl of Essex  
Daute  
Dobson  
Albert Durer  
Peter Dupuis  
Van Dyke  
Erasmus  
Vanden Eynden  
Sir Thos. Fairfax  
Fenelon  
La Fontaine  
C. J. Fox  
Francis I of France  
Frederick II of Prussia

Garriek  
Vander Geest  
George I  
George II  
George III  
George IV  
Gevartius  
Goltzius  
Gustavus A. of Sweden  
Guzman  
Hampden  
Henri IV  
Herbert, E. of Pembroke  
Howard, E. of Arundel  
John, Duke of Marlborough  
Montrose  
D. of Sully.

#### VOLUME II.

Clement IX  
Marq. of Granby  
Howard, D. of Norfolk  
Hume  
Johnson  
Inigo Jones  
Jacob Jordaens  
General Lambert  
Sir Peter Lely  
Locke  
Louis XVI  
Leo X  
Luther  
Milton  
Sir T. More  
Mytens  
Nelson

Newton  
John Nicot  
A. Percy, E. of Northumberland  
Peter I  
Petrarch  
William Pitt  
Paul du Pont  
Pym  
Raleigh  
Reynolds  
Philip Le Roy  
Rubens  
W. Russell, D. of Bedford  
Lord W. Russell  
Raphael  
Ed. Seymour, D. of Somerset  
Shakspeare

Algernon Sidney  
Chs. Ed. Stuart  
James Stuart, D. of York  
Steele  
John Thurloe  
Titian  
Ge. Villiers, D. of Buckingham  
Leonardo da Vinci  
Washington  
T. Wentworth, E. of Strafford  
West  
Wickliffe  
R. Wilson  
William III  
Cardinal Wolsey  
Sir Chr. Wren

#### RAPHAEL MORGHEN'S OPINION OF THE WORK,

expressed in a letter to Mr. Walmesley, the spirited Projector, was, that the specimens sent for his inspection excelled any thing produced in this Country, and he freely admitted his inability to surpass the Head of Michael Angelo, engraved by Cosmo Armstrong. By far the most eminent connoisseur of the present day permits the Publisher to express his perfect conviction of the justice of this opinion.

**HORACE WALPOLE'S**  
**ANECDOTES OF PAINTING IN ENGLAND,**  
 WITH SOME ACCOUNT OF THE  
 PRINCIPAL ARTISTS, AND INCIDENTAL NOTES ON OTHER ARTS.

*New Edition, considerably enlarged*

BY THE REV. JAMES DALLAWAY,

*With above 150 Portraits and Plates,*

EIGHTY-ONE OF WHICH ARE BEAUTIFULLY ENGRAVED, ON COPPER, BY FINDEN,  
 SCRIVEN, ROBINSON, AND WORTHINGTON.

5 VOLUMES, ROYAL OCTAVO, PUBLISHED AT £10 10 0.  
 HALF MOROCCO, UN CUT, ONLY £4 0 0.

**LIST OF THE PORTRAITS.**

The Author	Greenhill, Jno.	Mascall, E.	Sturt, Jno.
Arlaud, J. A.	Griffiere, Jno.	Matthews, Sir Toby	Sybrecht, Jno.
Arundel, Countess of	Gyles, H.	Medina, Sir John	Talman, W.
——— Earl of	Hanneman, Adr.	Mercier, P.	Thornhill, Sir Jas.
Bacon, Sir Nath.	Hayls, Jno.	Monamy, P.	Tillemans, P.
Baker	Hemskirk, Egbert	Monoyer, J. B.	Tilson, H.
Beale, Charles	Henry V, and Family	More, Sir Ant.	Tompson, R.
——— Mary	——— VI, Marriage of	Murray, T.	Torrentius, Jno.
Becket, Isaac	——— VII, Marriage of	Mytens, D.	Tuer, H.
Belcamp, Jno. Van.	Hertocks, A.	Oliver, Isaac	Vaillant, W.
Boit, H.	Hilliard, N.	——— Peter	Vanbrugh, Sir Jno.
Burlington, Earl of	Hogarth	Pass, Simon	Van Cleeve
Cecil, T.	——— with his Pipe	Payne, Jno.	Vanderbank, Ab.
Cibber, C. G.	Hoefnagle, G.	Pembroke, Earl of	——— P.
Cleyn, Fr.	Holbein	Petitot, Jno.	Vanderdort, Ab.
Cole, Sir R.	Hollar	Pierce, Edw. Sen.	Vandermeulen
Cooke, H.	Hondius, Ab.	——— Jun.	Vandevelde, W. Sen.
Cooper, S.	Honthorst, Ger.	Pine, Jno.	——— W. Jun.
Dahl, M.	Howard, H.	Place, F.	Vandiest, A.
Damer, Hon. Anna	Jameson, G. and Fam.	Polenburg	Vandyck
De La Fosse, C.	Jansen, Corn.	Pond, A.	Vansomer, P.
Delvaux, L.	Jervas, C.	Reisen, C. C.	Vanson, F.
Devonshire, Earl of	Jones, Inigo	Ricci, M.	Van Voerst, R.
Diepenbeck, Abr.	Kent, W.	——— S.	Vaughan, R.
Dobson, Wm.	Ketel, Corn.	Richardson, Jon.	Verrio, Ant.
Dorigny, Sir H.	Killigrew, Anne	Riley, Jno.	Vertue
Dubois, S.	Kneller, Sir Godfrey	Roestraten, P.	Vosterman, L.
Edema, Ger.	——— Jno. Z.	Roubiliac	Vroom, H. C.
Elder, Wm.	Laguerre, L.	Rowel, Jno.	Walker, R.
Evelyn	Lambert, Gen.	Rubens	Watteau, A.
Faithorne	——— Geo.	RUBENS' WIFE	White, R.
Flatman, Thos.	Laniere, N.	Rupert, Prince	Whinstanley, H.
Fuller, Isaac	Laroon, M.	Rysbrach	Wissing, W.
Garrard, M.	Le Fevre, C.	Schalken	Worldige
Gaspars, J. B.	Lely, Sir Peter	Sevonyans, E.	Wouters, F.
Geldorp, G.	Lens, B.	Smith, Jno.	Wren, Sir Christ.
Gentileschi, Hor.	Le Piper, F.	Steenwyck	Wyck, J.
Gerbier, Sir B.	Le Sœur, H.	Stone, H.	——— T.
Gibbons, Grindling	Liotard	——— N. Sen.	Zincke and his Wife
Gibbs, Jas.	Lodge, W.	——— Jun.	Zeemen, E.
Gibson, R.	Lombart, P.	Strange, Sir R.	Zoust, G.
Glover, G.	Mabuse	Streater, R.	Zuccaro, F.
Groupy, L.	Marshall, W.		

**OPINIONS ON THIS EDITION.**

"The Lives of the Painters, by Walpole, with notes, by the Rev. Mr. Dallaway, form FIVE PERFECTLY RESPLENDENT VOLUMES. The coarse, hard, metallic effect of the heads in the old editions is here transmuted into a natural tone of flesh. Several portraits are engraved from original pictures for the first time, and the new matter supplied by the tasteful Editor, can leave no doubt of the gradual disappearance of the earlier impressions (even at £10. 10s.). In the good old times of Bibliomania this work would have walked, of its own accord, into the mahogany book-cases of half the Collectors in London."—DIBDIN.

"AN ADMIRABLE PUBLICATION:—BEAUTIFUL ALIKE IN PAPER, PRINTING, AND ENGRAVING. Mr. Chalmers, in his Biographical Dictionary, justly observes of Walpole, that it was a pity he did not continue to improve and enlarge his Anecdotes, so as to render his book more valuable as a standard work on the Fine Arts. This desideratum Mr. Dallaway has supplied; and we can most impartially and honestly declare that he has done great honour to himself, and great service to his country, by having so successfully devoted himself to his laborious, though elegant, task. The embellishments, too, we repeat, in painters' phrase, are quite in keeping with the *tout ensemble* of the work, being at once spirited and highly characteristic. THE PUBLISHER HAS EVIDENTLY ENGAGED THE VERY FIRST-RATE TALENT IN THIS DEPARTMENT. In a word we cannot recommend this work too highly."—LITERARY GAZETTE.

A FEW SETS OF THE 81 PLATES ONLY, ENGRAVERS' PROOFS, ON INDIA PAPER, BEFORE the LETTERS, may be had,

PRICE £5 5. PUBLISHED AT £25 4

\* \* \* These copies have an extra plate, THE PORTRAIT OF RUBENS' WIFE,

DE FOE'S CELEBRATED NOVEL.  
 THE LIFE AND SURPRISING ADVENTURES OF  
**ROBINSON CRUSOE,**  
 Of York, Mariner,

WHO LIVED EIGHT AND TWENTY YEARS ALL ALONE ON AN UNINHABITED ISLAND,  
 ON THE COAST OF AMERICA, NEAR THE MOUTH OF THE GREAT RIVER  
 OROONOQUE; HAVING BEEN CAST ON SHORE BY SHIPWRECK, WHEREIN  
 ALL THE MEN PERISHED BUT HIMSELF. WITH AN ACCOUNT HOW  
 HE WAS AT LAST AS STRANGELY DELIVERED BY PIRATES.

AND THE FURTHER ADVENTURES,

BEING THE SECOND AND LAST PART OF HIS LIFE; AND OF THE STRANGE SUR-  
 PRISING ACCOUNTS OF HIS TRAVELS ROUND THREE PARTS OF THE GLOBE.

WRITTEN BY HIMSELF.

To which is prefixed an Historical and Biographical Preface, and a List of the  
 Author's Writings,

BY ALEXANDER CHALMERS, ESQ. F.S.A.

In Two Volumes, with 22 Line Engravings by C. HEATH, FROM THE  
 MAGNIFICENT DESIGNS OF THE LATE

THOMAS STOTHARD, ESQ. R.A.

*2 vols. 8vo. cloth lettered, published at 2l. 2s.*

**NOW REDUCED TO ONLY 16s.**

or half-bound morocco, uncut, 18s.

A FEW LARGE PAPER COPIES

In 2 vols. royal 8vo. (pub. at 3l. 13s. 6d.) boards, 1l. 4s. or half-bound morocco,  
 1l. 6s. 1820

In 2 vols. royal 8vo. proof impressions of the plates on *India Paper* (pub. at 5l. 5s.)  
 boards, 2l. 2s. 1820

Another copy, 2 vols. royal 8vo. large paper, *engraver's proofs before the letters, on  
 India paper, very few printed* (pub. at 8l. 8s.) 3l. 3s. 1820

If ever the late lamented Mr. Stothard entered more warmly upon any one of his labours  
 than another, the illustrations to *Robinson Crusoe* have that honour. Composed at a time  
 when he was in the fullest possession of his powers, there is a charm about them which no  
 other published book illustrations possess. They are as unique in their way as the book  
 they adorn.

**LIST OF EMBELLISHMENTS.**

- PLATE 1. *A Vignette*, composed of the Wreck of a Ship.
2. Robinson Crusoe taking leave of his Father and Mother.
  3. Robinson Crusoe and Zury alarmed at the sight of a Lion.
  4. Robinson Crusoe shipwrecked and clinging to a Rock.
  5. Robinson Crusoe upon his Raft.
  6. Robinson Crusoe at work in his Cave.
  7. Robinson Crusoe in his Island Dress.
  8. Robinson Crusoe discovers the print of a Man's Foot.
  9. Robinson Crusoe terrified at the dying Goat.
  10. Robinson Crusoe first sees and rescues his man Friday.
  11. Robinson Crusoe and Friday making a Boat.
  12. Robinson Crusoe and Friday making a Tent to lodge Friday's Father and the Spaniard.
  13. *A Vignette*, composed of Robinson Crusoe's Implements of Husbandry.
  14. Robinson Crusoe's first Interview with the Spaniards on his second landing.
  15. The Plantation of the two Englishmen.
  16. The two Englishmen retreating with their Wives and Children.
  17. The Spaniards and the Englishmen burning the Indians' Boats.
  18. Robinson Crusoe distributing Tools of Husbandry among the Inhabitants.
  19. A View of the Plantation of the three Englishmen.
  20. Robinson Crusoe's Seamen vowing revenge for the death of their Comrades.
  21. Chinese Gentleman at his Repast.
  22. Robinson Crusoe travelling in Chinese Tartary.

# THE VOICE OF EUROPE RESPECTING THE WORK.

"Robinson Crusoe," says MARMONTEL, "is the first book I ever read with exquisite pleasure, and I believe every boy in Europe will say the same thing."—"Was there ever anything written by mere man," remarks DR. JOHNSON, "that the reader wished longer, excepting Robinson Crusoe, Don Quixote, and the Pilgrim's Progress?"—"Next, indeed, to the Holy Scriptures, it may safely be asserted, that this delightful Romance has exerted the first and most powerful influence upon the juvenile mind of England. How happy that this, the most moral of Romances, is not only the most charming of books, but the most instructive."—

ALEX. CHALMERS.

The celebrated and enterprising BURKHARDT tells us, that "when his Arab friends came in the cool of the evening to sit at his gate, he used to amuse them by reading portions of his translation of Robinson Crusoe, when all expressed equal delight; and even the most bigotted lovers of oriental literature could not help confessing, that the Frankish storyteller had afforded them as much amusement as the historian of Sinbad, without ever having recourse to any thing in the smallest degree improbable, and without ever writing one sentence less pregnant with instruction than amusement."—"In the appearance of truth, in all the incidents and conversations that occur in them, these volumes exceed any work of fiction with which I am acquainted. It is perfect illusion. Robinson Crusoe is delightful to all ranks and classes. Capital kitchen-reading, De Foe's novels are worthy, from their interest, to find a shelf in the libraries of the wealthiest and most learned."—CHARLES LAMB.

"Since we must have books," says ROUSSEAU, "this is one which, in my opinion, is a most excellent treatise on natural education. It shall be a guide during our progress to maturity of judgment; and so long as our taste is not adulterated, the perusal of this book will afford us pleasure. IT SHALL BE THE TEXT TO WHICH ALL OUR CONVERSATIONS ON NATURAL SCIENCE ARE TO SERVE ONLY AS A COMMENT." "I agree with Rousseau, that *this is one of the best books that can be put into the hands of children*. It is one of those novels which one may read not only with pleasure, but also with profit. It breathes throughout a spirit of piety and benevolence; it sets in a very striking light the importance of the mechanic arts, which they who know not what it is to be without them, are apt to undervalue; it fixes in the mind a lively idea of the horrors of solitude, and consequently of the sweets of social life, and of the blessings which we derive from conversation and mutual aid; and it shows how, by labouring with one's own hands, one may secure independence, and open for one's self many sources of health and amusement."—

BEATTIE.

"If it be inquired by what charm it is that these '*Surprising Adventures*' should have instantly pleased, and always pleased, it will be found, that few books have ever so naturally mingled amusement and instruction. The attention is fixed, either by the simplicity of the narrative, or by the variety of the incidents; the heart is amended by a *vindication of the ways of God*

*to man*; and the understanding is informed by various examples, how much utility ought to be preferred to ornament: *the young* are instructed, while *the old* are amused."—G. CHALMERS.

"Crusoe has obtained a ready passport to the mansions of *the rich* and the cottages of *the poor*, and communicated equal delight to *all ranks and classes* of the community. Whilst *youth and ignorance* have found ample scope for entertainment in the succession of incidents, told with all the simplicity and verisimilitude of real life, it has commended itself to the *more enlightened*, as one of those rare efforts of genius, that places its Author in the first rank amongst the writers of invention. As a narrative replete with incidents, it stands unrivalled for its natural and easy transitions from one part of the story to another, unincumbered with irrelative matter, or display of useless ornament. The whole machinery is strictly subservient to the main object of the story, and its various parts are so nicely adjusted, that there is nothing wanting to complete the chain, nor to heighten the interest. FEW WORKS HAVE BEEN MORE GENERALLY READ, OR MORE JUSTLY ADMIRER; FEW THAT HAVE YIELDED SUCH INCESSANT AMUSEMENT, AND AT THE SAME TIME, HAVE DEVELOPED SO MANY LESSONS OF PRACTICAL INSTRUCTION."—SIR W. SCOTT.

SERGEANT TALFOURD, in his late admirable speech on the law of copyright, says:—"Look at De Foe; recollect him pilloried, bankrupt, wearing away his life to pay his creditors in full, and dying in the struggle. And his works live, imitated, corrupted, yet casting off the stains, not by protection of law, but by their own pure essence. Had every schoolboy whose young imagination has been prompted by his great work, and whose heart has learned to throb in the strange yet familiar solitude he created, given even the halfpenny of the statute of Anne, there would have been no want of a provision for his children, no need of a subscription for a statue to his memory!"—"Robinson Crusoe," says D'ISRAELI, "the favourite of the learned and the unlearned, of the youth and the adult, the book that was to constitute the whole library of Rousseau's Emilius, displays all the forcible genius of one of the most original minds our literature can boast."—"No fiction in any language was ever better supported than these Adventures of Robinson Crusoe."—BLAIR.

"More than a century has now elapsed since the first publication of this charming work, but it has lost none of its interest. With few exceptions, no work has been so often printed, nor so extensively read; and the solid foundation upon which its popularity is built, will continue to maintain it as long as the language exists. Until of late years, if we except the early editions, which are respectably printed, it has walked abroad only in a homely dress. . . . *In point of exterior embellishment, no edition of this enchanting work can compete with that issued by Messrs. Cadell and Davies, in 1820, in 2 vols. 8vo. WITH 22 EXQUISITE LINE ENGRAVINGS, executed by HEATH, from Drawings by STOTHARD. With these the paper and typography are in good keeping, and altogether, it exhibits Crusoe in his gayest clothing.*"—WILSON'S DE FOE.

**SMIRKE'S****ILLUSTRATED EDITION OF DON QUIXOTE.****DON QUIXOTE DE LA MANCHA,**

Translated from the Spanish of

**MICHAEL DE CERVANTES DE SAAVEDRA,**

AND EMBELLISHED WITH

**SEVENTY-FOUR FINE ENGRAVINGS,**

FROM PICTURES, BY THE LATE

**ROBERT SMIRKE, ESQ. R.A.**

4 Vols. royal 8vo. Large Paper, Published at £15 15.—Reduced to £4.

OR HALF-BOUND, UNCUT, £4 4 0.

If Smirke had only contributed these unrivalled Illustrations to our stock of specimens of the English School of Painting, his reputation could never have reached higher; and notwithstanding the great merit of his other productions, he will always be ranked in the Catalogue of British Artists, as the ILLUSTRATOR OF DON QUIXOTE.

**ALSO A CHEAP EDITION, WITH FIFTY PLATES,***4 Vols. 8vo. Half-bound Morocco, uncut,***PUBLISHED AT £6 6 0.—REDUCED TO £1 16 0.**

The Plates are executed by the first engravers of the day, including RAIMBACH, ENGLEHEART, HEATH, FITTLER, GOLDING, MITAU, and others. It may be said that this is the only edition of Don Quixote, in an English dress, which is worthy to be placed on the shelves of the amateur. At its reduced price it is now within the reach of every body.

“A patient complaining to Abernethy of great depression of spirits, received, in lieu of a prescription, the simple recommendation to ‘read Don Quixote.’”—BLACKWOOD'S MAGAZINE.

“Children thumb it, boys read it, men understand it, and the old commend it;—it is no sooner laid down by one than another takes it up, some struggling and some entreating for a sight of it: in fine, this history is the most delightful and least prejudicial entertainment that ever was seen; for in the whole book there is not the least shadow of a dishonourable word.—A performance which is the delight and admiration of all Europe.”—SMOLLETT.

“The famous history of Don Quixote, which thousands read with pleasure.”—DE FOE.

“Was there ever any thing written by mere man, that was wished longer by its reader, excepting Don Quixote, Robinson Crusoe, and the Pilgrim's Progress?”—JOHNSON.

DR. LYALL'S PUBLICATIONS ON RUSSIA.

---

THE  
CHARACTER OF THE RUSSIANS

AND A DETAILED

HISTORY OF MOSCOW;

ILLUSTRATED WITH 26 COLOURED PLATES,

WITH

A DISSERTATION ON THE RUSSIAN LANGUAGE;

AND

*An Appendix,*

CONTAINING TABLES, POLITICAL, STATISTICAL, AND HISTORICAL; AN ACCOUNT OF THE IMPERIAL AGRICULTURAL SOCIETY OF MOSCOW; A CATALOGUE OF PLANTS FOUND IN AND NEAR MOSCOW; AN ESSAY ON THE ORIGIN AND PROGRESS OF ARCHITECTURE IN RUSSIA, &c. &c.

IN LARGE 4to. 764 PAGES, BOARDS,

PUBLISHED AT £4 4 0.—REDUCED TO £1 1 0

---

OPINIONS ON THE WORK.

“We do not exactly know whether this book of Dr. Lyall's will be thought the best which has yet been published on Russia, but we are certain that no other English writer has either had the same opportunities to make a good one, or shewn a better disposition to make use of his advantage. He resided for eight or nine years in the country—spoke the language familiarly—traversed repeatedly almost all the European Provinces; and lived on terms of intimacy with very many individuals, in all the classes of its people. The English Authors whose partial representations he has found it most necessary to correct, are *Dr. Clarke, Sir R. Ker Porter, and Sir R. Wilson*, none of whom understood the language of the country, or had much opportunity to judge fairly of its peculiarities.—There is a great deal of curious reading for curious readers,—and the plates with which the work is illustrated and embellished are, for the most part, very beautiful.”—ED. REV.

“This work is forbidden because it is hostile to Russia, and written against the Government and the whole Russian Nation.”—EMP. ALEXANDER'S UKASE.

---

**TRAVELS IN RUSSIA,**

THE KRIMEA, CAUCASUS, AND GEORGIA,

BY ROBERT LYALL, M.D. F.L.S.

*2 vols. 8vo. woodcuts, cloth boards,*

PUBLISHED AT £1 10 0.—REDUCED TO £0 14 0.

---

FROM THE EDINBURGH REVIEW.

“The rich and the poor—the privileged and neglected—see their fellow-man under very different aspects. In a country like Russia, therefore, which is made up of extremes, the most opposite accounts may be expected.—The opposite reports of such travellers naturally resemble the contradictions of the two Knights on the subject of the shield, which was gold on one side and brass on the other. Each described truly what he saw, and only erred in supposing them to be the whole. Dr. Lyall has not only seen *both* sides of the shield, but examined into its inner structure; and qualified himself to report, not merely as to the depth and value of its glittering surface, but also as to the substance and firmness of its sevenfold frame.”

# COL. LANDMANN'S

## ILLUSTRATED WORK ON PORTUGAL.

HISTORICAL, MILITARY,

AND

## PICTURESQUE OBSERVATIONS

ON

# PORTUGAL,

ILLUSTRATED BY 75 COLOURED PLATES,

INCLUDING AUTHENTIC PLANS OF THE SIEGES AND BATTLES FOUGHT  
IN THE PENINSULA DURING THE LATE WAR,

**UNDER THE DUKE OF WELLINGTON AND MARSHAL SOULT,**

**BY GEORGE LANDMANN,**

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL IN THE CORPS OF ROYAL ENGINEERS,

*2 vols. folio, with 75 coloured Engravings,*

PUBLISHED AT £15 15 0.—REDUCED TO £5 5 0, in cloth bds.

OR £6 6 0, HALF-BOUND MOROCCO, UNCUT.

### LIST OF THE PLATES.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 Torre Velha de Belem, <i>Estremadura</i>               | 38 View of the Tejo   |
| 2 Palmella from the Road to Moita, <i>ditto</i>          | 39 Torres-Vedras, from the North  |
| 3 Town and Harbour of Setubal                            | <i>These three views, 37, 8, and 9, when put together, form a Panorama of Lisbon, extending to 36 inches in length.</i> |
| 4 Alcaçer-do-Sal (Salacia), <i>Estremadura</i>           | 40 Vimiero, 21st and 22d August, 1808   |
| 5 River Oeiras at Mertola (Myrtilis-Julia)               | 41 Vimiero, <i>Estremadura</i>  |
| 6 Mertola from the North                                 | 42 Leira, (Collipo), <i>ditto</i>   |
| 7 Faro, Capital of Algarve                               | 43 Pombal and Bridge, <i>ditto</i>  |
| 8 Aljustel, <i>Alemtejo</i>                              | 44 Coimbra, (Coimbra), <i>Beira</i>   |
| 9 Albofeira, <i>Algarve</i>                              | 45 Ditto, from the South  |
| 10 Ditto, from the East, with Sea Coast                  | 46 Bridge of Boats at Porto, on the River Douro   |
| 11 Villa-Nova de Portimao, <i>Algarve</i>                | 47 Penafiel de-Sousa, <i>Entre-Douro-è-Minho</i>  |
| 12 Entrance to the Harbour of Portimao                   | 48 Amarante, <i>ditto</i>   |
| 13 Silves, from the Ancient Capital of <i>Algarve</i>    | 49 Amarante and Bridge, from San Domingo  |
| 14 Ditto, from the East                                  | 50 Fountain at Ponte-de-Lima  |
| 15 Hot Baths in the Mountains of Monchique, <i>Alg.</i>  | 51 Ponte-de-Lima (Forum Limicorum)  |
| 16 Monchique, near Cape St. Vincent, <i>ditto</i>        | 52 Valença-do-Minho   |
| 17 Apomar Velho, near Monchique                          | 53 City of Tuy, on the Mino, <i>Galicia</i>   |
| 18 Coast near Lagos, and Pinhao Battery                  | 54 Head of the Bay of Vigo, <i>ditto</i>  |
| 19 Bay and Harbour of Lagos                              | 55 Road to Ponte-Vedra, <i>ditto</i>  |
| 20 Lagos Bridge, <i>Algarve</i>                          | 56—59. Tortures in the Inquisition  |
| 21 Aljezur, from the South, <i>ditto</i>                 | 60, 61. War Money of Marshal Junot  |
| 22 Villa-Nova, de Mil Fontes, <i>Alemtejo</i>            | 62 Plan of the Battle of Rolica   |
| 23 Arroyolos, (Calantica), <i>ditto</i>                  | 63 Ditto of the Battle of Vimiero   |
| 24 Estremoz, from the Evas Road, <i>ditto</i>            | 64 Ditto of the Battle near Corunna   |
| 25 Cintra, from the Lisbon Road, <i>Estremadura</i>      | 65 Ditto of the Battle of Talavera  |
| 26 Convent near Cintra, on the Lisboa Rock               | 66 Ditto of the Battle of Busaco  |
| 27 Convent on the highest part of the Lisboa Rock        | 67 Ditto of the operations before Tarifa  |
| 28 Cintra, from the Road to Mafra                        | 68 Ditto of the Action of Barrosa   |
| 29 Royal Palace of Mafra, <i>Estremadura</i>             | 69 Ditto of the Battle of Badajoz   |
| 30 Punhete, at the Junction of the Zezere and Tejo       | 70 Ditto of the Battle of Albuera   |
| 31 View from the Castle Abrantes (Tubuci), <i>Estre.</i> | 71 Ditto of the Army at Arroyo Molinos  |
| 32 Bridge and Ford on the River Niza                     | 72 Ditto of Attack on Ciudad Rodrigo  |
| 33 Flying Bridge on the Tejo, at Villa-Velha             | 73 Ditto of the Battle of Salamanca   |
| 34 Ford on the River Sever, Frontiers of Spain           | 74 Ditto of the Attack on Burgos  |
| 35 Pass in the Mountains near Ladeira, <i>Beira</i>      | 75 Siege of St. Sebastian   |
| 36 Mouth of the Tejo                                     |   |
| 37 Lisbon  |   |

\*.\* This is by far the most beautiful book on Portugal. The Narrative of the Campaign of the British Army is acknowledged to be the most accurate yet published, and comprehends the entire history to the conclusion of the Peace of 1814.

DUGDALE'S MONASTICON AND ST. PAUL'S.

MONASTICON ANGLICANUM,

A HISTORY

OF THE

ABBEYS AND OTHER MONASTERIES,  
Hospitals, Friaries,

AND

CATHEDRAL AND COLLEGIATE CHURCHES,

IN

ENGLAND AND WALES:

AND ALL SUCH

SCOTCH, IRISH, AND FRENCH MONASTERIES,

AS WERE IN ANY MANNER CONNECTED WITH THE  
RELIGIOUS HOUSES IN ENGLAND.

A NEW EDITION, GREATLY ENLARGED AND IMPROVED, AND  
CONTINUED FROM LEIGER BOOKS, CHARTULARIES, ROLLS,  
AND OTHER NATIONAL DOCUMENTS, BY

MESSRS. CALEY, ELLIS, AND BANDINEL,

*Illustrated with 246 Magnificent Plates, and several Hundred Woodcuts.*

FIFTY-FOUR PARTS FOLIO, A SUBSCRIBER'S COPY,

PUBLISHED AT £141 15 0.—REDUCED TO £40.

Of this National Work, national in every sense of the word, 20 copies are all that now remain for sale, and these have only been acquired by purchasing such sets as remained incomplete on the death of subscribers. It is well known that the Publishers could not supply sets sufficient to meet the demand, and that large premiums were given to secure copies. As every body at all interested in the Antiquities of his country, whether in reference to its Architectural Grandeur, or Ecclesiastical and Topographical History, must be anxious to possess the work at its reduced price, an early application is suggested.

*Incomplete Copies can only be completed at the original publication price.*

THE

HISTORY OF ST. PAUL'S CATHEDRAL  
IN LONDON,

FROM ITS FOUNDATION. EXTRACTED OUT OF ORIGINAL RECORDS,  
CHARTERS, LEIGER BOOKS, AND OTHER MSS.

BY SIR WM. DUGDALE, KNT.

With continuation to the present time, and the Autobiography of Sir Wm. Dugdale,

BY SIR H. ELLIS.

SECOND EDITION, WITH ADDITIONAL PLATES.

Part I.—Price £1 1 0.

THIS WORK WAS ORIGINALLY PUBLISHED AT £15 15 0.

THE PRESENT EDITION WILL BE COMPLETED IN 4 PARTS.

*Only 150 copies are printed.*

# BRITTON'S

## ARCHITECTURAL AND TOPOGRAPHICAL WORKS.

## I.

### ARCHITECTURAL ANTIQUITIES OF GREAT BRITAIN,

Including a Series of 360 Engravings, by Le Keux, representing the most beautiful, curious, and interesting Ancient Edifices of this Country, with an Historical and Descriptive account of each subject; 5 vols. 4to., half-bound morocco, uncut.

PUBLISHED AT £28 12 0.—REDUCED TO £15 0 0.

## II.

VOL. V. WITH SEPARATE TITLE.

### CHRONOLOGICAL AND HISTORICAL ILLUSTRATIONS

Of the Ancient Ecclesiastical Architecture of Great Britain: consisting of Eighty Plates of Plans, Elevations, Sections, Views, and Details of several Edifices, engraved by Le Keux, with ample Historical and Descriptive Accounts of each; 4to., half-bound morocco, uncut.

PUBLISHED AT £6 12 0.—REDUCED TO £3 3 0.

## III.

### CATHEDRAL ANTIQUITIES OF ENGLAND.

An Historical, Architectural, and Graphic Illustration of the English Cathedral Churches: viz. Salisbury, York, Winchester, Norwich, Lichfield, Oxford, Canterbury, Wells, Exeter, Peterborough, Gloucester, Bristol, Hereford, and Worcester, 6 vols. 4to. with 322 Plates, from Drawings by Blore, Cattermole, Gandy, and Baxter, engraved by J. and H. Le Keux, and Twelve Wood-cuts by Branston, half-bound morocco, uncut.

PUBLISHED AT £35 0 0.—REDUCED TO £15 15 0.

\*The Cathedrals are sold separately:

	Reduced price.	Published at	Reduced price.	Published at
	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.	£ s. d.
Salisbury, 31 plates .....	1 11 6	.. 3 3 0	Wells, 24 plates .....	1 5 0 .. 2 10 0
Norwich, 25 plates .....	1 5 0	.. 2 10 0	Exeter, 22 plates .....	1 5 0 .. 2 10 0
Winchester, 30 plates .....	1 11 6	.. 3 3 0	Peterborough, 16 plates.....	0 19 0 .. 1 18 0
York, 35 plates.....	1 16 0	.. 3 15 0	Gloucester, 22 plates .....	1 5 0 .. 2 10 0
Lichfield, 16 plates .....	0 19 0	.. 1 18 0	Bristol, 12 plates .....	0 12 0 .. 1 4 0
Oxford, 11 plates.....	0 12 0	.. 1 4 0	Hereford, 16 plates .....	0 19 0 .. 1 18 0
Canterbury, 26 plates.....	1 11 6	.. 3 3 0	Worcester 16 plates.....	0 19 0 .. 1 18 0

On Large Paper only the following can be had:—

Salisbury .....	2 2 0	.. 5 5 0	Worcester .....	1 16 0	.. 3 3 0
Winchester .....	2 2 0	.. 5 5 0	Hereford .....	1 16 0	.. 3 3 0
Canterbury .....	2 12 6	.. 5 5 0	Exeter .....	1 16 0	.. 4 4 0
Peterborough .....	1 16 0	.. 3 3 0	York .....	2 5 0	.. 6 6 0

## IV.

### ANTIQUITIES OF ENGLISH CITIES.

Picturesque Antiquities of the English Cities; consisting of a Series of Sixty Engravings, by Le Keux, and Twenty-four Wood-cuts, illustrating the most interesting Ancient Buildings, Street Scenes, Old Houses, Castles, Crosses, Bars, or Gate Houses in the different Cities; accompanied by Historical and Descriptive Accounts of each Subject, and of the popular characteristics of every place, 4to. with 60 plates, by Le Keux, and 24 Wood-cuts by Williams, cloth lettered.

PUBLISHED AT £7 4 0.—REDUCED TO £2 4 0.

“Mr. Britton, in his Cathedral and Architectural Antiquities, has presented us with a large variety of objects most admirably delineated by the most distinguished artists who have followed that peculiar line of drawing and engraving. In the *fifth volume* of his Architectural Antiquities he has collected nearly all the different opinions on the question, amounting to upwards of fifty, extracted from set treatises or incidental disquisitions.”—EDINBURGH REVIEW, No. XCVIII. Oct. 1829.

## PUGIN'S GOTHIC ARCHITECTURE.

### SPECIMENS OF GOTHIC ARCHITECTURE ;

SELECTED FROM VARIOUS ANCIENT EDIFICES IN ENGLAND ;

Consisting of Plans, Elevations, Sections, and Parts at large ; calculated to exemplify the various Styles and the practical Construction of this Class of admired Architecture ; accompanied by Historical and Descriptive Accounts.

THE DRAWINGS BY A. PUGIN ;

AND THE ENGRAVINGS BY J. LE KEUX, ROFFE, E. TURRELL.

This work contains a series of ONE HUNDRED AND FOURTEEN PLATES, illustrative of the Early Architecture of England, as displayed in Pinnacles, Roofs, Lanterns, Parapets, Chimneys, Turrets, Capitals, Niches, Arches, Spandrels, Doors, Doorways, Gateways, Windows, Fire-places, Mullions, Tracery, &c. The Letter-press, by E. J. WILLSON, Esq. Architect and F.S.A. is explanatory of the Plates and historical of the Subjects represented, with a Glossary of ancient technical terms.

2 VOLS. 4TO. PUBLISHED AT £6. 6S. REDUCED TO £4. 4S.

OR ON LARGE PAPER, 2 vols. imp. 4to.

PUBLISHED AT £9. 9S.—REDUCED TO £6. 6S.

*The Gothic Architecture of Oxford exemplified.*

### SPECIMENS OF GOTHIC ARCHITECTURE,

FROM THE DOORS, WINDOWS, BUTTRESSES, PINNACLES, &c. WITH  
THE MEASUREMENTS, SELECTED FROM THE BUILDINGS  
AT OXFORD ;

BY PUGIN AND MACKENZIE.

Sixty-one Plates, 4to. cloth,

PUBLISHED AT £2. 2S.—REDUCED TO £1. 1S.

## PUGIN'S NORMAN ARCHITECTURE.

PUGIN AND LE KEUX'S ENGRAVED SPECIMENS OF THE

### *Architectural Antiquities of Normandy ;*

Consisting of Plans, Elevations, Views, &c. of several Edifices of that Province, with historical and descriptive Letterpress, by JOHN BRITTON, Esq. F.S.A. &c.

This Publication consists of EIGHTY ENGRAVINGS, elucidating the characteristics and peculiar members of several Buildings. Besides serving to illustrate, architecturally and scientifically, the styles and varieties of the Ancient Buildings of Normandy, the Work tends to exemplify the variations between the Early Architecture of that Country and of England ; and thus furnishes data for the Critical Antiquary, and Practical Examples for the Architect.

The Plates are wholly engraved by J. and H. LE KEUX ; and represent the Ecclesiastical Architecture of the Churches of Abbaye aux Hommes, and Abbaye aux Dames ; St. Nicholas and Than, at Caen ; St. Ouen and St. Vincent, at Rouen ; the Cathedral at Bayeaux ; the Domestic Architecture of the Palais de Justice, Hotel de Boucherould, and the Archbishop's Palace, at Rouen ; and the Chateau Fontaine le Henri, near Caen, &c.

"Mr. Pugin's works furnish the most valuable practical instructions—they are standards of taste to which we can constantly refer, and we sincerely hope he will prosecute his interesting labours with unabated zeal."—LITERARY GAZETTE.

THE AUTHOR'S OWN ORIGINAL RESERVED COPIES OF  
**FORBES' ORIENTAL MEMOIRS.**

A NARRATIVE  
 OF  
 SEVENTEEN YEARS' RESIDENCE IN INDIA.  
 INCLUDING  
 OBSERVATIONS ON PARTS OF AFRICA AND SOUTH AMERICA,  
 AND  
 JOURNALS OF FOUR INDIAN VOYAGES.

**EMBELLISHED WITH NINETY-THREE FINE ENGRAVINGS.**

The numerous Plates of Natural History are Beautifully Coloured, 4 vols. roy. 4to.

**PUBLISHED AT £18 18 0.—REDUCED TO £7 7 0.**

THESE COPIES HAVE THE ORIGINAL PROOF IMPRESSIONS OF THE PLATES, and were reserved by the Author for presentation to his friends. They had been put by in a warehouse, and forgotten. The Colouring is quite free from the modern fault of an attempt to give *prettiness* for *correctness*, by the use of gum.

"THIS IS THE ORIGINAL AND ONLY COMPLETE EDITION. It was printed at the expense of the Author. The composition was the labour and amusement of many years. It abounds with striking pictures of the Manners, Customs, and Habits of the People of India. In the *Quarterly Review*, Vol. XII. is an elaborate account of the work, which occupies forty-seven pages. The Reviewer observes, 'A work more splendid or more complete in its decorations we have seldom seen.' At the death of Mr. Forbes THESE RESERVED COPIES were deposited in a warehouse, and forgotten, or not a single copy would have remained unsold."—EVANS' CATALOGUE.

*List of Plates contained in the Author's own Edition.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Portrait of the Author                           | 51 English Villa at Baroche                      |
| 1 Humming Birds at the Brazils                   | 53 Mausoleum of Baba Rahan                       |
| 2 Blue Banana Bird at Rio de Janeiro             | 54 Curmoor or Florican                           |
| 3 Hindoo Peasant ascending the Cocoa Nut Tree    | 55 Sahras  |
| 4 View taken under Cubbeer-Burr                  | 56 Green Pigeon and Cur Champah                  |
| 5 Monkeys in the Concan                          | 57 Blue Locust and Faggot Caterpillar            |
| 6 Jac Tree                                       | 58 Skeleton Mantis and Oil Plant                 |
| 7 Cobra de Capello                               | 59 Durbar and adjacent Scenery at Dhuby          |
| 8 Dancing Snakes and Musicians                   | 60 Gate of Diamonds at Dhuby                     |
| 9 Baya, or Bottle Nested Sparrow                 | 61 Specimen of Sculpture in the Gate of Diamonds |
| 10 Nests of the Baya                             | 62 Peasants at a Well                            |
| 11 Tailor Birds of Hindostan                     | 63 Indian Squirrel and Tamarind                  |
| 12 Bulbul, or Indian Nightingale                 | 64 Grains in Guzerat, Boutah, &c.                |
| 13 Young Hindoo among the Secular Bramins        | 65 Ditto, Juarree, &c.                           |
| 14 Hindoo Family of the Banian Caste             | 65*Mahwhaw (or Mowaw) Tree of Guzerat            |
| 15 Dancing Girls and Musicians                   | (This has been substituted for Plate 52, which   |
| 16 Manner of travelling in a Palanquin           | does not appear, having been spoiled by the      |
| 17 Indian Hackeree                               | Engraver.)                                       |
| 18 Mahomedan Youth of distinction                | 66 The Wedded Banian Tree                        |
| 19 Mahomedan of distinction and Dervise          | 67 Hindoo Devotees—Gosaing and Jetty Tribes      |
| 20 Parsees at Bombay                             | 68 Ditto—Jungam and Byragee Tribes               |
| 21 Bombay, in 1773                               | 41 Scene of a Melancholy Event at Salsette       |
| 22 Bombay, from Malabar Hill                     | 69 Scene on the Banks of the Nerbuddah           |
| 23 Bombay Green                                  | 70 Brahmin Woman of distinction                  |
| 24 View on Bancoote River                        | 71 Small Hindoo Temple on the Banks of the       |
| 25 Blue Lizard, and Neva Tree                    | Nerbuddah  |
| 26 Temple at Alla Bhaug                          | 72 Banian Tree in a Guzerat Village              |
| 27 Surat   | 73 Sacred Hindoo Groves near Chandode            |
| 28 Cheeta Hunt                                   | 74 Coolie Chieftain                              |
| 29 Goa Harbour                                   | 75 Inlaid work on the Taje-Mahal                 |
| 30 City of Goa                                   | 76 Jumma Musjed                                  |
| 31 Mazagon Mango and Papilio Bolina              | 77 Shah-Bhaug                                    |
| 32 Tellicherry                                   | 78 Water Temple                                  |
| 33 Calicut                                       | 79 The Keurah Tree                               |
| 34 Cochin  | 81 Ditto, the Flower and young Fruit             |
| 35 Anjengo                                       | 82 Ditto, the Fruit in a ripe state              |
| 36 Hindoo Temple near Eddova                     | 82*Cocoa Nut Trees (in place of No. 80, which    |
| 37 Cashew Apple of Malabar                       | does not appear)                                 |
| 38 Interior of the Temple of Elephanta           | 83 A Gracia Chieftain with his Attendants        |
| 39 Pillars at Salsette and Elephanta             | 84 Ryjee Sibng                                   |
| 40 Hill Fort on the Island of Caranjah           | 85 View of Cubbeer Burr                          |
| 42 Ragonath Row                                  | 86 Ramifications of a Banian Tree                |
| 43 The Peshwah and his Ministers                 | 87 Bridge over the Bismawintree                  |
| 44 Cambay  | 88 Red, blue, and white Lotus                    |
| 45 Nabob of Cambay                               | 89 Onore Fort after the Siege of 1783            |
| 46 Sculpture in a subterraneous Temple at Cambay | 90 Kingfisher and Frog of Malabar                |
| 47 Mahratta Foot Soldier                         | 91 Interior View of St. Helena                   |
| 48 Mahratta Horseman                             | 92 Flying Fish                                   |
| 49 Table Land, and distant View of Cape Town     | 93 Medusa  |
| 50 Baroche                                       |  |

MISCELLANEOUS BOOKS, OF WHICH ONLY A FEW COPIES ARE IN HAND.

## HB. POLITICAL SKETCHES.

A COMPLETE SET OF THE POLITICAL SKETCHES OF THE CELEBRATED HB. FROM THE COMMENCEMENT IN 1829 TO THE END OF JUNE, 1839; CONSISTING OF 600 SUBJECTS, BOUND IN 6 VOLS. FOLIO, HALF MOROCCO, GILT EDGES (PUBLISHED AT £63.)

ONLY £36. 15s.

As a source of perpetual amusement these volumes are unrivalled in modern times. For the DRAWING-ROOM TABLE, the RECEIVING ROOM OF THE PHYSICIAN, or the WAITING ROOM OF THE LEGAL PROFESSION, no other volumes of equal interest can be named.

EACH VOLUME IS ACCOMPANIED BY A 'KEY, A DUPLICATE OF WHICH, BOUND UP IN OCTAVO, WILL BE GIVEN WITH THE SET.

### BEN JONSON'S WORKS ;

With Notes, Critical and Explanatory, and a Biographical Memoir. By W. GIFFORD, Esq. 9 vols. 8vo. cloth boards.

PUBLISHED AT £6. 6s.—REDUCED TO £3. 13s. 6d.

### GIBBON'S

HISTORY OF THE DECLINE AND FALL OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

8 vols. 8vo. cloth boards,

PUBLISHED AT £3. 4s.—REDUCED TO £2. 8s.

### HENRY'S HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN,

12 vols. 8vo. cloth boards.

PUBLISHED AT £4. 4s.—REDUCED TO £2. 2s.

### HOOKE'S ROMAN HISTORY,

6 vols. 8vo. map, cloth boards:

PUBLISHED AT £3. 3s.—REDUCED TO £2. 2s.

### EUROPEAN SCENERY.

ITALY, by Miss Batty, 62 plates; SWITZERLAND, by Major Cockburn, 62 plates; SICILY, by Major Light, 62 plates; FRANCE, by Captain Batty, 62 plates; GERMANY, by Captain Batty, 62 plates.—5 vols. imperial 8vo. half-bound morocco, gilt top edges.

PUBLISHED AT £34. 5s.—REDUCED TO £8.

### GELL'S POMPEII.

TOPOGRAPHY, EDIFICES, AND ORNAMENTS OF POMPEII. The Result of the Excavation since 1819. 2 vols. roya 117 plates, half-bound morocco, uncut, gilt top edges.

PUBLISHED AT £7. 7s.—REDUCED TO £2. 12s. 6d.

### FLAXMAN'S OUTLINES TO DANTE.

ONE HUNDRED AND TWELVE ILLUSTRATIONS TO DANTE. THE ORIGINAL ROMAN EDITION, oblong 4to. VELLUM PAPER.

PUBLISHED AT £4. 4s.—REDUCED TO £3. 3s.

These copies of the AUTHOR'S OWN original Edition, have recently been discovered in the stock of an old warehouse, where they had been forgotten.

## FLAXMAN'S COMPOSITIONS FROM DANTE.

HELL, PURGATORY, AND PARADISE. One Hundred and Twelve Plates in Outline, oblong 4to. THE LONDON EDITION, cloth.

PUBLISHED AT £4. 4s.—REDUCED TO £2. 2s.

“The designs of Mr. Flaxman are the noblest productions of art, and frequently display a sublime simplicity which is worthy of his great original. Indeed, he who is so able to transfer such creations from one fine art to another, seems of a mind little inferior to his who could first conceive them. To borrow the words of an excellent Italian sculptor—‘Mr. Flaxman has translated Dante best, for he has translated it into the universal language of Nature.’”

---

## ROBERTS' SPANISH SCENERY.

LANDSCAPE ANNUAL for 1835, 36, 37, and 38, containing an Historical and Topographical Account of Spain, illustrated with Eighty-Four Engravings after D. Roberts, 4 vols. royal 8vo. LARGE PAPER, INDIA PROOFS, MOROCCO.

PUBLISHED AT £10. 10s.—REDUCED TO £5. 5s.

---

## LIPSCOMB'S HISTORY OF BUCKINGHAM.

THE HISTORY AND ANTIQUITIES OF THE COUNTY OF BUCKINGHAM, by GEORGE LIPSCOMB, M.D., royal 4to. plates, Part I.

PUBLISHED AT £2. 2s.—REDUCED TO £1. 1s.

---

## SPECIMENS OF THE GOTHIC ORNAMENTS

SELECTED FROM LAVENHAM CHURCH, SUFFOLK.

FORTY PLATES, 4to. cloth,

*Published at 18s.—Reduced to 12s.*

---

## THE ARCHITECTURAL ANTIQUITIES OF NORMANDY,

IN ONE HUNDRED PLATES, ETCHED BY COTMAN,

With Descriptions by DAWSON TURNER, ESQ.

2 vols. folio, cloth, £6. 6s. *Published at £12. 12s.*

2 vols. folio, PROOFS ON INDIA PAPER, cloth, £10. 10s. *Published at £21.*

---

## MOSES'S SELECT GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES FROM VASES,

THIRTY-SEVEN PLATES, cloth, 10s. 6d. *Published at £1. 1s.*

---

## DR. TURTON'S CONCHOLOGY.

## BIVALVE SHELLS OF THE BRITISH ISLANDS,

*Systematically arranged, with Twenty Plates, coloured by Sowerby,*

4to. cloth, PUBLISHED AT 4l. 4s. REDUCED TO 2l.

# LIST OF NEW PUBLICATIONS.

## THE ROYAL GALLERY OF PICTURES.



A SELECTION OF

### The Cabinet Paintings

IN

## HER MAJESTY'S PRIVATE COLLECTION IN BUCKINGHAM PALACE.

IN ONE VOLUME, ROYAL 4TO. PRICE £4.4s. ELEGANTLY BOUND,  
OR ON LARGE PAPER, WITH PROOF IMPRESSIONS OF THE PLATES, £6.6s. HF.-BD. MOROCCO, UNCUT.

With the ROYAL GALLERY OF PICTURES, preserved in Buckingham Palace, the private property of HER MOST GRACIOUS MAJESTY, the public are not altogether unacquainted; for at the request of the Directors of the British Institution, many of these Paintings have been permitted to enrich their annual Exhibitions of the works of the Old Masters. The taste and munificence of two successive Sovereigns have produced a Collection of Pictures, genuine, interesting, and splendid. Other galleries may be more numerous, but none have been formed on principles of such severe and scrutinizing selection. No picture is to be met with in Buckingham Palace, whose history, from the artist's time to the present day, is doubtful; none but the finest and purest specimens of genius, none but works whose inspiration guided every line of the pencil, have been admitted.

Some of the pictures formed part of the well known collection of Lady Holderness; some were selected from the galleries of Lord Rendlesham, and M. Schmidt of Amsterdam. The entire collection of Dutch Pictures which belonged to the late Sir Francis Baring, was secured for his late Majesty King George the Fourth, as were also Rubens' "Portrait of his Wife," from a descendant of the artist; and the splendid picture of the "Marriage of St. Catherine," by VANDYKE, from the collection of M. de Burtin, of Brussels.

The late JOHN YOUNG, Esq. whose descriptive catalogues of the Galleries of the DUKE OF SUTHERLAND, the MARQUIS OF WESTMINSTER, the ANGERSTEIN COLLECTION, &c. &c. justly hold so conspicuous a rank in the estimation of the amateur, selected this Series of Subjects, presented to the public, under the title of "THE ROYAL GALLERY OF PICTURES." It was his intention "to produce highly finished etchings, with appropriate letter-press descriptions of the Dutch and Flemish Pictures, and of some of our own School;" and he was engaged upon the work at the time of his decease. Since that period the plates have been gradually progressing, in the hands of some of the most eminent engravers of the present day, without regard to cost, having been chiefly executed by J. BURNET, S. W. REYNOLDS, W. GREATBATCH, J. C. ALLEN, T. JEAVONS, J. P. QUILLEY, and W. J. TAYLOR; from drawings made expressly for the work by ROYAL PERMISSION, under the superintendence of

JOHN LINNELL, ESQ.

#### CONTENTS.

1. REMBRANDT. The Wise Men's Offering, engraved in the manner of Rembrandt, by	BURNET.
2. VANDYCK. Marriage of St. Catherine, engraved in mezzotint, by	WARD.
3. GERARD DOUW. The Grocer's Shop, engraved in the line manner, by	GREATBATCH
4. AD. VAN OSTADE. Interior of a Boor's Cottage, ditto, ditto, by	GREATBATCH
5. IS. VAN OSTADE. Country Inn Door, with Boors and Market Carts, ditto, ditto, by	ALLEN.
6. CUYP. Landscape, with Ruins of an old Tower, Foresters, and Dogs, ditto, ditto, by	TAYLOR.
7. PAUL POTTER. The Milk Maid and Farm Stables, ditto ditto, by	GREATBATCH.
8. SIR JOSHUA REYNOLDS. The Death of Dido, engraved in mezzotint, by	REYNOLDS.
9. REMBRANDT. The Ship Builder and his Wife, ditto, ditto, by	QUILLEY.
10. TITIAN. Landscape, with Herdsmen driving Cattle, ditto, ditto, by	LINNELL.
11. BOTH. Philip baptizing the Eunuch, engraved in the line manner, by	TAYLOR.
12. TENIERS. The Gardener, (Portraits of Teniers, his Family, and Gardener) ditto	LE PETIT.
13. KAREL DU JARDIN. Cows and boys, ditto, ditto, by	ALLEN.
14. DIRK STOOP. The Battle Field, ditto, ditto, by	ALLEN.
15. WOUVERMANS. The Hay Field, ditto, ditto, by	ALLEN.
16. SIR JOSHUA REYNOLDS. The Marquis of Granby, engraved in mezzotint, by	REYNOLDS.
17. GRANET. Monks at their devotion, the celebrated picture, ditto, ditto, by	QUILLEY.

[TURN OVER

## THE ROYAL GALLERY OF PICTURES.

- |     |                      |   |             |
|-----|----------------------|---|-------------|
| 18. | MYTENS.              | Charles I, Henrietta Maria, and Infant, engraved in the line manner, by | BACON.      |
| 19. | BERGHEM.             | Landscape, with Figures, ditto, ditto, by                               | JEAVONS.    |
| 20. | HOBBEWA.             | The Water Mill, ditto, ditto, by  | JEAVONS.    |
| 21. | CUYP.                | Horses and Figures in a Landscape, ditto, ditto, by                     | PRESBURY.   |
| 22. | WOUVERMANS.          | The Trumpeter and Sutler's Tent, ditto, ditto, by                       | GREATBATCH. |
| 23. | TENIERS.             | Rocky Landscape, with Figures, ditto, ditto, by                         | LE PETIT.   |
| 24. | SIR JOSHUA REYNOLDS. | Cymon and Iphigenia, engraved in mezzotint, by                          | REYNOLDS.   |
| 25. | REMBRANDT.           | The Lady with a Fan, ditto, ditto, by                                   | QUILLEY.    |
| 26. | REMBRANDT.           | Portrait of a Jew Rabbi, ditto, ditto, by                               | QUILLEY.    |
| 27. | RUBENS.              | Portrait of his Wife, engraved in the line manner, by                   | SMITH.      |
| 28. | A. VANDEVELDE.       | The setting out of a Hawking Party, ditto, ditto, by                    | ALLEN.      |
| 29. | PAUL POTTER.         | The Shooting Ponies, ditto, ditto, by                                   | TAYLOR.     |
| 30. | TENIERS.             | The Mountain Pass, ditto, ditto, by                                     | LE PETIT.   |
| 31. | SIR JOSHUA REYNOLDS. | Count La Lippe, engraved in mezzotint, by                               | REYNOLDS.   |
| 32. | DEDICATION PLATE,    | designed by STOTHARD, and engraved by                                   | BACON.      |

### Opinions of the Press.

"It is well known that the peculiar taste of his Majesty George IV. led him to the especial, although not to the exclusive admiration of the Flemish School of Painting; and those who recollect, and have been admitted into, Carlton House, must remember the highly-finished and exquisite pictures, principally of that school, with which the walls of its comparatively small and domestic apartments were enriched. Many of them have also appeared at the annual exhibitions of the old Masters at the British Institution; so that their merits are pretty generally known and appreciated. Having devolved to our present gracious and beloved Sovereign, they are now among the chief ornaments of her Majesty's private collection at Buckingham Palace. Such being the case, the plan of publishing a selection from these chefs-d'œuvre, under the superintendence of Mr. Linnell, himself an artist of well-known talents, appears to us to be an excellent one, and cannot fail to be favourably received by the lovers of the fine arts. The work is to consist of four parts, each containing eight plates. In the present part, the very first that meets the eye—REMBRANDT'S 'Wise Men's Offering,' engraved by Burnet—conveys a singularly striking and correct idea of the character of the original picture: the effect of light is perfectly phosphoric. VANDYKE'S 'Marriage of St. Catharine,' engraved by Ward; GERARD DOUW'S 'Grocer's Shop,' engraved by Greatbatch; ISAAC OSTADE'S 'Country Inn Door,' engraved by Allen; CUYP'S 'Landscape, with Foresters and Dogs,' engraved by Taylor; PAUL POTTER'S 'Milk Maid and Farm Stables,' engraved by Greatbatch (the terrified Cock in which, making the best of his way, with legs and wings, to escape from an approaching danger, must overcome the gravity of the most saturnine spectator); and SIR JOSHUA'S 'Death of Dido,' engraved by his namesake Reynolds; are also, each in its way, admirably executed."—LITERARY GAZETTE.

"The Second Part is quite equal to the First."—IBID.

"The subjects are chosen with a sufficient attention to variety."—ATHENÆUM.

"We heartily wish this publication the success it merits, and which it will be our duty to forward by every means in our power. The subjects are well engraved; they are not intended to be highly wrought; but artistic skill is deemed of more importance than elaborate finish, and accuracy of copy of greater moment than neatness of execution. We earnestly hope that the plan may answer, and that we may not always be discouraged from attempting in England, what they do so well in France."—ART UNION.

"When we first saw the plan of publication of this work, we augured favourably of it; and the execution of the First Part, which now lies before us, fully justifies our anticipation, that it will prove a very delightful addition to even the most valuable collections of engravings. It is published under the superintendence of Mr. Linnell; and will consist of four parts, containing in the aggregate thirty-two plates, from the most esteemed Cabinet paintings in her Majesty's private collection at Buckingham Palace. The Part published presents REMBRANDT'S 'Wise Men's Offering,' engraved by Burnet; VANDYCK'S 'Marriage of St. Catharine,' by Ward; A. VAN OSTADE'S 'Interior of a Boor's Cottage,' by Greatbatch; GERARD DOUW'S 'Grocer's Shop,' by Greatbatch; IS. VAN OSTADE'S 'Country Inn Door,' by Allen; CUYP'S 'Landscape, with Foresters and Dogs,' by Taylor; PAUL POTTER'S 'Milkmaid and Farm Stables,' by Greatbatch; and SIR J. REYNOLDS'S 'Death of Dido,' by Reynolds. This is a case in which names speak volumes; and in the living do ample justice to the dead. The particular style of each of the several great painters whom we have named is admirably preserved, and the plates are such as the engravers of England alone could produce."—HULL TIMES.

"This is a new work, got up under the superintendence of John Linnell, Esq., and consists of engravings after celebrated Pictures in her Majesty's Private Collection. The First Part consists of eight Plates, all engraved with great care and neatness. The distinguishing works of the set are, however, VANDYCK'S 'Marriage of St. Catharine,' admirably engraved by Ward, and SIR JOSHUA REYNOLDS'S 'Death of Dido,' mezzotinted by S. W. Reynolds: the latter is especially a beautiful and most attractive production. The work is beautifully got up, and ought to succeed."—MORNING HERALD.

# DR. DIBDIN'S NORTHERN TOUR.

## A BIBLIOGRAPHICAL, ANTIQUARIAN, AND PICTURESQUE TOUR

IN THE COUNTIES OF

Lincoln, York, Durham, and Northumberland,

AND

SCOTLAND.

BY THE REV. THOMAS FROGNALL DIBDIN.

EMBELLISHED WITH UPWARDS OF 100 ENGRAVINGS.

2 vols. royal 8vo. boards, £4. 14s. 6d.

\*\* A SINGLE COPY, ON LARGE PAPER, THE PROPERTY OF A SUBSCRIBER,  
Price £10.10s.

In every respect this is one of the most beautiful publications which has issued from the press of this country. A combination of talent is here exhibited in the same work, which of late years has never been excelled. English and Scottish artists have both been called into requisition, and the result has been two such resplendent volumes as only Great Britain could have produced.

The chief points or objects of this work are developed in the title-page; namely, BIBLIOGRAPHY, ANTIQUITIES, and THE PICTURESQUE. But it would be an unjust conclusion to infer that these beautiful volumes embraced no other subjects: for there is much of HISTORICAL RESEARCH, and more of SOCIAL INTERCOURSE; the author having been made a welcome visitor at some of the most respectable societies in the North of England, and in Scotland. THE PICTURESQUE DEPARTMENT tells its own tale, by a careful glance at the numerous and beautiful plates by which these pages are adorned: nor will it detract from their value to know that, on the completion of the number required for the work, they have been destroyed. For the *first* time, many of the BOOK-TREASURES in the public and private libraries of Scotland have been made generally known to the readers of both countries; and the narrative, whether upon lighter or graver matters, is sustained by an equability of style in accordance with the subject discussed. *The reader is irresistibly led to accompany the author, whether he ranges the heights of Ben Lomond, explores the wonders of the Trossachs, or is hanging over the precipices, adown which the Falls of the Clyde tumble.* Nor will he be less pleased with him in his post-chaise; when the wheels rattle over the Yorkshire moors, or stop at the barbicans of ruined castles. A COURSE OF NEARLY TWO THOUSAND MILES has been accomplished, with equal variety of observation and felicity of style; and the Scotch, in particular, have abundant reason to cherish and to boast of this resplendent and imperishable performance, "which will continue for ages to yield to others as much delight as it has done to us."—LITERARY GAZETTE.

ALSO BY THE SAME AUTHOR,

## REMINISCENCES OF A LITERARY LIFE; With Anecdotes of Books and Book Collectors,

In 2 vols. 8vo. embellished with numerous plates, price £1. 10s. in boards, with General Index.

By the same Author, nearly ready, in 8vo. price 15s. bds.

## A COURSE OF LECTURES ON THE REFORMATION;

As delivered at the National School Room, St. Mary's, Bryanston Square.

With Specimens of the PULPIT ELOQUENCE of some of our EARLIER PROTESTANT DIVINES, and BIOGRAPHICAL NOTICES, &c. &c. &c.

CONEY'S

# Church Architecture of the Middle Ages

---

*No. I. royal folio, 12 plates, price One Guinea,*

A SERIES OF MAGNIFICENT ETCHINGS

OF

CATHEDRALS, CHURCHES,

Hospitals, Monasteries, and Friaries,

AND OTHER ECCLESIASTICAL EDIFICES IN

England and Wales,

DRAWN AND ENGRAVED BY JOHN CONEY.

WITH DESCRIPTIVE LETTERPRESS BY THE REV. J. A. GILES, LL.D.

HEAD MASTER OF THE CITY OF LONDON SCHOOL, AND LATE FELLOW OF CORP. CH. COLL. OXFORD.

---

THIS magnificent series of topographical illustrations was drawn and engraved at an expense of upwards of SIX THOUSAND GUINEAS, for the new edition of *Dugdale's Monasticon*. The very limited impression of that work has left the plates in as perfect a state as when they first quitted the Engravers' hands. To meet the spirit of the times, the proprietors have determined upon a re-issue of them, with ENGLISH DESCRIPTIONS, in MONTHLY PARTS, each containing *at least* TWELVE PLATES, price ONE GUINEA.

The Parts will be ARRANGED IN COUNTIES, and each county will be sold separately. PART I. is now ready, containing Twelve Plates, illustrating the COUNTY OF YORK. PART II. will contain Sixteen Plates, and will complete the Yorkshire Series.

"This publication has the advantage of appearing at a moment particularly favourable to its object. It consists of the choicest plates of *Dugdale's Monasticon*, with a compendious letter-press; and, as each county will be comprised in one or more distinct monthly numbers (which may be procured separately), the work will meet the various wishes of many, whom taste, or partiular associations, may lead to desire the views and description of some, rather than other, ancient edifices. But, in fact, by this excellent publication, the entire of that portion of the *Monasticon* which is most important, or most interesting, to the professional or *dilettante* student of ancient art, is made accessible to many who could not afford to enrich their libraries with that expensive work. Fortunately, the limited number of impressions taken off for it, has left the plates in their original freshness; and greater attention to the materials employed, gives them even an advantage, in this publication, over their appearance in the former. While, therefore, we commend the zeal of those who have thus undertaken to reproduce them, we earnestly recommend them to the attention of our readers, who will here find a rich mine of artistic wealth, in the most beautiful models of every age, during which the pointed, or ecclesiastical, style of architecture flourished in this country."—DUBLIN REVIEW, No. XIII. August, 1839.

**LAMBERT'S GENUS PINUS.**

*In three volumes, imperial folio, THE ONLY COMPLETE EDITION, the plates most exquisitely coloured, in the first style of Art, equal to the original Drawings, and mounted upon cardboard, hf-bd. morocco, gilt edges, £78. 15s.*

**DESCRIPTION OF THE GENUS PINUS,**

By A. B. LAMBERT.

ILLUSTRATED WITH FIGURES, DIRECTIONS AS TO CULTIVATION, AND REMARKS ON THE SEVERAL SPECIES OF THE FAMILY OF CONIFERÆ.

THE DESCRIPTIONS OF THE SPECIES IN THE SECOND AND THIRD VOLUMES,  
BY PROFESSOR DON, LIBR. L.S.

This impression, the whole of the text of which is printed in a uniform size, is got up in a very superior style, all the plates having the appearance of highly finished drawings. ONLY 25 SETS HAVE BEEN TAKEN OFF, and the whole were coloured under the IMMEDIATE INSPECTION OF PROFESSOR DON, an advantage liberally accorded, with the sole motive of rendering the work as perfect as possible.

*In royal folio, price 24s. in cloth.*

**FLAXMAN'S**

**ANATOMICAL STUDIES OF THE BONES AND MUSCLES,**

*For the use of Artists.*

TWENTY-ONE PLATES, ENGRAVED BY HENRY LANDSEER,  
AND PORTRAIT BY CLAUSON:

WITH TWO ADDITIONAL PLATES, AND EXPLANATORY NOTES.

By WM. ROBERTSON.

*In two Vols. 8vo. with plates, price 30s. bound in cloth.*

**THE COURSER'S COMPANION,**

SECOND EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED;

TO WHICH IS ADDED,

**THE BREEDER'S GUIDE;**

*Or, Breeding in all its Branches,*

BY THOMAS THACKER, OF DERBY.

In its improved state, the COURSER'S COMPANION, it is hoped, will find a place in the library of every amateur of the Leash, containing, as it now does, every point of information connected with the most classical of field-sports. The Code of Laws laid down in the former edition having been adopted by the principal clubs in this country and Ireland, has rendered the work of the utmost importance to the coursing public; whilst the Treatise on Breeding makes it the indispensable Manual in the Kennel. To the man of taste the book, from the simplicity of its style, possesses many charms, enlivened as it is by copious anecdote and illustration.

**LEMPRIERE'S CLASSICAL DICTIONARY,**

Containing a Copious Account of the proper names mentioned in Ancient Authors, re-edited by E. H. BARKER, Esq. the Third Edition, corrected, improved, and enlarged from the Seventh American Edition, by CHARLES ANTHON, Esq.

**BY THE ADDITION OF UPWARDS OF 4000 ARTICLES.**

8vo. boards, 16s. 6d. bound in sheep, 18s.

This is the only Edition of LEMPRIERE'S CLASSICAL DICTIONARY which can be consulted for CORRECT INFORMATION. It will be found to contain upwards of FOUR THOUSAND ARTICLES, chiefly Geographical, which are not in either of the editions published by the author or his son, in quarto or octavo.

**MR. DANSEY ON RURAL DEANS.**

*In Two Volumes, small 4to. price £1. 4s. bds.*

**HORÆ DECANICÆ RURALES,**

BEING AN ATTEMPT TO ILLUSTRATE  
BY A SERIES OF NOTES AND EXTRACTS,

The Name and Title,

The Origin, Appointment, and Functions, Personal and Capitular,

OF

**Rural Deans,**

WITH A FEW INCIDENTAL REMARKS ON THE RISE AND DECAY OF RURAL BISHOPS,  
AND ON THE INCARDINATION OF PAROCHIAL CLERGY.

BY THE REV. WILLIAM DANSEY, A.M.

RECTOR OF DONHEAD ST. ANDREW, *Rural Dean* OF CHALKE, WILTS.

This most important work on the Church, should find a place on the shelves of every clergyman of the Establishment. The History of the Rise and Progress of the Parochial Clergy, alone, fills space enough to have formed a small separate volume, and of the great importance of this section of Mr. Dansey's labours, there can be but one opinion. Archdeacon Goddard, in his recent charge, strongly recommends this work, as "abounding in solid Ecclesiastical and Antiquarian views;" and the reviewers in the elaborate notice of the book in the *Quarterly Theological* and in the *British Magazine*, pass the highest eulogium upon the talented author, whom they compare to the eminent divines of former days. To place his labours within the reach of all his brethren, Mr. Dansey has liberally caused the volumes to be charged only at the cost of the paper and print. Very few copies now remain for sale.

**MR. SEWELL'S NEW WORKS.**

SACRED THOUGHTS IN VERSE,

Suggested by texts from Scripture, by WILLIAM SEWELL, A.M. Professor of Moral Philosophy, Oxford, 12mo. SECOND EDITION, ENLARGED, with Views in the Isle of Wight. 12mo. cloth boards, 10s. 6d.

The same, without the plates, 12mo. price 5s. cloth boards.

This edition contains several new poems, and is uniformly printed with Pickering's Aildine Poets, the Works of Scott, Byron, Southey, &c. &c. To the pious reader there can scarcely be a more acceptable present than this beautiful little volume.

SERMONS, ADDRESSED TO YOUNG MEN;  
Preached chiefly in the Chapel of Exeter College, Oxford,  
By WILLIAM SEWELL, A.M. 12mo. boards, 9s.

THE ATTACK UPON THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD,  
In a Letter to EARL GREY, by WILLIAM SEWELL, A.M. 8vo. 3s.

TWO SERMONS ON THE ENFORCEMENT OF ATTENDANCE  
UPON DAILY WORSHIP:  
Preached in the Chapel of Exeter College. To which is annexed, a Letter to  
LORD STANLEY, by WILLIAM SEWELL, A.M. 8vo. 2s.

In 12mo. price 4s. cloth boards.

TEN DISCOURSES  
ON THE PRINCIPAL EVENTS IN THE LIFE OF MOSES,  
By THE REV. M. ANDERSON, M.A. ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,  
MINISTER OF EAST DULWICH CHAPEL.

## SHAKESPEARE VINDICATED.

*In post 8vo. bound in cloth lettered, price 9s.*

SHAKESPEARE'S  
AUTOBIOGRAPHICAL POEMS :

BEING HIS

*Sonnets clearly Developed.*WITH HIS CHARACTER, DRAWN CHIEFLY FROM HIS WORKS, AND  
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS TO SOME OF HIS PLAYS,

BY CHARLES ARMITAGE BROWN.

"In closing the volume and recommending it strongly to the reader's perusal, we are fain to add to our many expressions of satisfaction, the assurance that we shall look to any future production of the same pen with high interest, since nothing, we are persuaded, will fall from it which is not indicative of research originality, and discrimination."—DUBLIN REVIEW.

COMPANION TO "THE DIARY OF AN INVALID."

NOTES ON NAPLES,  
AND ITS ENVIRONS,  
AND ON  
THE ROAD TO IT FROM ROME;  
BY A TRAVELLER.*Crown 8vo. bound in cloth, price 9s.*

"THIS MORE THAN CLEVER BOOK might be fitly reviewed in verse, on Charles Lamb's principle of 'being modest for a modest man;' for it is full—to brimming over—with the poetry of Italian life, and nature, and antiquity.... The Author is not only able to feel and to express delight on seeing, in the Museo Borbonico, Spagnoletto's Silenus, whom he finds depicted, '*instead of the jovial reveller of Bacchus, as 'a pale-visaged, vulgar anchoret, coarse and soddened, and foul, and in all the bestiality of ebriety, without its joyousness;*' on seeing '*noble Parmegiano's*' Columbus, '*the colouring of which gushes upon the eye like organ notes upon the ear:*' but in addition to these powers of appreciating works of art, he approaches Horace, the inimitable, in the gusto with which he tells an anecdote.... If he have any more 'NOTES' gathered in the course of his foreign travel, he cannot do better than print them; and, in the mean time, we thank him heartily for having so pleasantly beguiled an hour of leisure, by bringing to our premature firesides, what bids fair to become a rarity,—a book which is like,

'A beaker, full of the warm South.'—ATHENÆUM.

*8vo. plates, price 14s. boards,*

## SCANDINAVIAN SKETCHES,

OR,

A TOUR IN NORWAY,

BY LIEUTENANT BRETON, R.N.

Author of "Excursions in New South Wales," &amp;c. &amp;c.

This will be found to be by far the most useful guide to the tourist in Norway. This second edition contains much valuable information to the Scandinavian Angler.

*In 2 vols. 8vo. THE SECOND EDITION, enlarged, price £1. 1s. bds.*

## BRYDGES' MISSION TO PERSIA.

ACCOUNT OF THE TRANSACTIONS OF HIS MAJESTY'S MISSION  
TO THE COURT OF PERSIA, IN 1807-11,

By the Right Honourable

SIR HARFORD JONES BRYDGES, BART.

K.C. D.C.L. Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary to the Court of Teheran.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED

SOME ACCOUNT OF THE WAHAUBY, AND BRIEF HISTORY OF PERSIA,

*In 2 vols. 8vo. illustrated with a three-sheet Map of Persia, and a Map of the  
Nedsjed Country.*

Mr. Morier, in his sketch of the progress of the Mission, (published in 1812) says: "I must content myself with adding, that Sir Harford succeeded in his great object, and concluded a Treaty with Persia, (when the French influence had already baffled and driven away one English agent—Sir John Malcolm) by which the French in their turns were expelled, and our influence restored, at a time when, instead of co-operation, he experienced every counteraction from the British Government of India, and encountered all the rivalry of the active and able emissaries of France."

*In 1 vol. 8vo. illustrated with Plates.*

## THE DYNASTY OF THE KAJARS,

Translated from the original Persian Manuscript, presented to the RIGHT HON. SIR HARFORD JONES BRYDGES, BART. K.C. LL.D. To which is prefixed, a succinct Account of Persia, previous to the death of Lutf Aly Shah.

### *Sutherland's Map of Persia.*

*In 3 Sheets, price 1l. 1s. coloured; mounted on canvas, in a case, price 1l. 11s. 6d.*

## A MAP OF AZERBAEJEJAUN, AND PART OF ARMENIA AND GEORGIA,

With the Route of His Majesty's Mission, under the RIGHT HON. SIR HARFORD JONES BRYDGES, BART. from Abooshehr to the North of Persia, constructed chiefly from personal survey, by COLONEL SIR JAMES SUTHERLAND.

The present Seat of War.

*Octavo, price 2s.*

## SUBSTANCE OF A SPEECH,

Partly delivered at the India House, on Friday, July 26th, 1833, and part of which was withheld, at the desire of the Chairman, in consequence of the short time allowed to prepare, and present on that day, a Petition to the House of Commons against the India Bill; by the RT. HON. SIR HARFORD JONES BRYDGES, BART.

*Octavo, price 3s.*

## LETTER ON THE PRESENT STATE OF BRITISH INTERESTS AND AFFAIRS IN PERSIA,

Addressed to the MOST NOBLE RICHARD MARQUIS WELLESLEY, K.G. ETC. ETC.  
By SIR HARFORD JONES BRYDGES, BART.

*Octavo, price 1s.*

## LETTER TO LORD FRANCIS EGERTON, M.P.

PRESIDENT OF THE CAMDEN SOCIETY,

On the propriety of confining the efforts of that body to the illustration of a strictly early period of history and literature,

By JAMES ORCHARD HALLIWELL, Esq.

## Aubrey's History of North Wilts.

---

In quarto, the impression limited to 100 copies, illustrated with a map and cuts, 2l.2s.

### AUBREY'S COLLECTIONS FOR THE COUNTY OF WILTS, PRINTED UNDER THE SUPERINTENDENCE OF SIR THOMAS PHILLIPPS, BART. F.S.A.

*From the MS. of Jno. Aubrey, Esq. Author of the History of Surrey*

---

In one Volume, 4to. price £1. 16s. boards,

### SIR WILLIAM POLE'S COLLECTIONS TOWARDS A DESCRIPTION OF THE COUNTY OF DEVON.

---

## Warwickshire Visitations.

---

### INDEX TO WARWICKSHIRE VISITATIONS IN HARL. MSS.

3 pp. folio, closely printed, for insertion in the various editions of Dugdale's History of the County. Price 3s.

The importance of this Index is best evinced by stating that upwards of 200 families will be found enrolled in the Harleian volumes, numbered 1167, 6060, 1100, 1563, 1195, which contain the whole of the Warwickshire Visitations.

---

## Geo. Allan's Durham Collections.

---

### COLLECTANEA AD STATUM COMITATUS DUNELMENSIS SPECTANTIA, A SERIES OF MISCELLANEOUS PAPERS, GRANTS, LETTERS PATENT, CHARTERS, ETC. RELATING TO THE COUNTY OF DURHAM.

4to. consisting of 60 leaves, price 5s.

Printed at the private press of Geo. Allan of Darlington, and containing: Title-page, List of Bishops, Mr. Rud's Remarks, Manors held of the Bishops, 10 leaves; Miscellanies from Rymer's Fœdera, 7 leaves; Inspeximus of the Surrender of the Monastery of Durham, 1540, 3 leaves; Grant to Queen Henrietta Maria, 2 leaves; Answer of the Dean respecting the non-production of the Chapter-book, 1646, Ordinance for sale of the Bishop's lands, 1646, with the particulars of sale, 3 leaves; Recommendatory Letter, &c. of Oliver Cromwell for erecting a College at Durham, his Letters Patent for founding the same, Address of the Provost and Fellows to his son Richard, and Extracts from the Commons' Journals touching the same, 14 leaves; Assize at Durham, 1651, 3 leaves; Foster versus Armorer, 2 leaves; Rules and Orders of the County Court, 1772, 14 leaves; Pennant's American Annals, 1775-78, 4 leaves; in all 60 leaves, 4to.

---

## STUKELEY'S STONE-HENGE AND ABURY,

Temples of the British Druids, illustrated and restored, 2 vols. folio, with 76 plates, reprinted in the old style, on fine paper, hf.-bd. morocco, uncut, £4. 1837  
— another copy, 2 vols. in 1, folio, plates, russia extra, gilt and marbled edges, in the *Baumgarten* style, £5. 5s. 1837

## DESCENT OF THE CROWN OF ENGLAND

Exhibited in Three Tables :

- I. THE TRUE HEREDITARY SUCCESSION FROM EGBERT TO JAMES I.  
 II. THE TRUE HEREDITARY SUCCESSION FROM WILLIAM I TO CHARLES III.  
*(Commonly called the Young Chevalier.)*  
 III. THE DE FACTO SUCCESSION FROM EDMUND IRONSIDE TO GEORGE III.

BY JOSEPH RITSON.

Printed on a single sheet, for insertion in the various Histories of England, 2s. 6d.

A MAGNIFICENT PRINT,

Forming a Companion Print to the TRIAL OF LORD WILLIAM RUSSELL.

THE TRIAL OF ALGERNON SIDNEY,  
 IN 1683,

Engraved in Mezzotinto by JOHN CHARLES BROMLEY, from the original Picture,  
 painted by F. P. STEPHANOFF,

IN THE POSSESSION OF

RICHARD CHASE SIDNEY, ESQ.

Size 25 inches by 20.

The scene represents the Court of King's Bench, at the most interesting moment, when Sidney, in reply to the insinuations of Judge Jeffreys, extending his arm, exclaims, "My Lord, feel my pulse, and see if I am disordered: I bless God that I was never in a better temper than I am now." The Print contains portraits of many eminent men of that period.

Prints, £2. 2s.—Proofs, £4. 4s.—Proofs before the Letters, £6. 6s.

8vo. with frontispiece, price 5s.

A BRIEF MEMOIR OF THE LIFE

OF THE

HON. COLONEL ALGERNON SIDNEY,

With a Short Account of his Trial in the Court of King's Bench, Nov. 7, 1683.  
 To which is added a Description of Mr. Stephanoff's Painting of that Celebrated  
 Event, intended to accompany Mr. J. Charles Bromley's Engraving.

PUBLISHING IN MONTHLY PARTS.

A NEW GENERAL  
 BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY,

PROJECTED AND PARTLY ARRANGED

BY THE LATE

REV. HUGH JAMES ROSE, B.D.,

PRINCIPAL OF KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON:

EDITED BY THE

REV. HENRY J. ROSE,

LATE FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

The "NEW GENERAL BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY" is publishing in Monthly  
 Parts, price 4s. 6d. each, and, when completed, will most probably not exceed  
 twelve closely printed volumes, octavo.

## CLASSICAL LITERATURE.

NEW EDITION OF HEYNE'S VIRGIL.  
In 8vo. pp. 800, elegantly printed, price 14s. bds.

### PUBLII VIRGILII MARONIS OPERA, NOTIS EX EDITIONE HEYNIANA EXCERPTIS ILLUSTRATA, ACCEDIT INDEX MAITTAIRIANUS.

EDITIO SECUNDA.

Edited by the late Mr. Bisset. This Second Edition is most beautifully and correctly printed, and has been introduced at ETON, and the other public schools, and is recommended by the Council of the UNIVERSITY OF LONDON.

NEW EDITION OF ZEUNIUS' TERENCE.  
Elegantly printed in 8vo. pp. 856, price 16s. bds.

### PUBLII TERENCE CARTHAGINIENSIS AFRI COMŒDIÆ SEX,

Ex Recensione Frid. Lindenbrogii et cum notis selectis Bentleii, Lindenbrogii, Westervovii, Zeuniique, necnon Scholiis Ælii Donati, Calphurnii, et Eugraphii;

Quibus nunc primum

SCHOLIA ANONYMI (Fortasse CALLIOPII) et PICTURAS VETERES,  
ab Ang. Maio E. Codd. Ambros. nuper edita, adjunxit  
J. A. GILES, LL.D. NUPER SOCIUS C. C. C. OXON.

The recently recovered Scholia, published by Cardinal Maio, from the Ambrosian MS. of the 9th century, are prefixed to the Terence; as are also the pictures which illustrate those Scholia. This edition is recommended by the Council of the UNIVERSITY OF LONDON.

## POETÆ LATINI MINORES.

### GERMANICI CÆSARIS,

Incltyi Ducis, Poetæ Elegantis, Reliquiæ quæ extant omnes, ex recensione et cum Notis Jo. CASP. ORELLII. Additis præterea, Notis omnibus Casparis Barthii, Jani Brœkhusii, Petri Burmanni Secundi, Hugonis Grotii, H. Meyeri, Guil. Morellii, Claudii, Salmasii, J. Scaligeri, J. C. Schwartzii, H. Turnebi, Jani Ulitii, et aliorum. Quibus etiam Scholia vetera auctoris incerti, ex editione Buhliana, adjunxit J. ALLEN GILES, LL.D. Collegii Corporis Christi apud Oxon. nuper Socius. Elegantly printed in 8vo. 17. 1s. 1838

### CORNELII MAXIMIANI

ETRUSCI GALLI ELEGIÆ SEX, ex recensione et cum Notis WERNSDORFII. Iterum exudi fecit J. A. GILES, LL.D. Collegii Corporis Christi apud Oxonienses nuper Socius. Elegantly printed in 8vo. 10s. 6d. 1838

Of these volumes only 100 Copies are printed. They are elegantly done up, and lettered.

### SEVERI SANCTI.

(*Endeleichi*) Rhetoris et Poetæ Christiani, de Mortibus Boum Carmen; a Vineto et Pitheo servatum, cum Notis Weitzii, Siberi, et Wernsdorfii, edidit J. A. GILES, LL.D. 8vo. 7s 6d. 1838

### VALERII CATONIS.

Carmina, cum Notis Putschii et Wernsdorfii, cura J. A. GILES, 8vo. 14s. 1838

### RUFII FESTI AVIENI

Quæ extant omnia, ex Editionibus Variis conquisita, cum Notis Variorum, edidit J. A. GILES, LL.D. Collegii Corporis Christi Oxoniensis nuper Socius. 8vo. 17. 1s. 1839

### QUINTI ENNII

Poetæ inter Romanos Vetustissimi Reliquiæ quæ extant omnes, ex Editionibus Variis conquisitæ a J. A. GILES, LL.D. Collegii Corporis Christi inter Oxon. nuper Socio. Elegantly printed in 12mo. bds. 4s.

### ANTIMACHI COLOPHONII RELIQUIÆ,

Græce, post SCHELLENBERGIUM iterum auctius editæ, a  
J. A. GILES, LL.D. COLL. C. C. OXON.

## CLASSICAL LITERATURE.

---

Nearly ready, to be completed in 3 vols. 8vo.

### HERODOTI HISTORIÆ GRÆCÆ.

FROM THE TEXT OF BEKKER,

With Notes Critical and Explanatory, by the REV. JOHN EDWARDS, A.M.  
Head Master of the Grammar School, Bury St. Edmunds.

VOL. I.

---

In 2 vols. royal 8vo. published at £2. 12s. 6d. reduced to £1. 10s.

THE FEW REMAINING LARGE PAPER COPIES OF

### LEXICON HERODOTEUM

QUO ET STYLI HERODOTEI UNIVERSA RATIO ENUCLEATE EXPLICATUR, ET QUAM  
PLURIMI MUSARUM LOCI EX PROFESSO ILLUSTRANTUR

AB JOHANNE SCHWEIGHÆUSER.

---

#### SCHOOL BOOKS:

### CAII CRISPI SALLUSTII

Catalina et Jugurtha in usum Scholarum. Curavit J. A. GILES, LL.D. Editio  
Secunda. Elegantly printed in 12mo. boards, 4s.

This volume has been introduced into the City of London, Rugby, and Leicester Schools.

### A LATIN GRAMMAR,

By the REV. J. A. GILES, Head-Master of the City of London School, and late  
Fellow of C. C. C. Oxford, Second Edition, enlarged and improved, 8vo. cloth  
boards, 6s.

The most useful Latin Grammar published.

### THE TRUE DOCTRINE OF THE LATIN SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,

Proved upon the authority of the best Latin Classics, by the REV. RICHARD  
BATHURST GREENLAW, M.A. 8vo. boards, 8s.

### MANUAL OF ARITHMETIC.

FRACTIONS, AND DECIMALS, for the use of Schools, by the Rev. J. A. GILES, LL.D.  
Second Edition, 12mo. bound, 2s.

### A MANUAL OF ALGEBRA,

For the Use of Schools, by the REV. J. A. GILES, 12mo. bound, 2s.

### HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

A COMPLETE HISTORY OF ENGLAND; from its first Discovery down to the  
Accession of her present Majesty, on a new Plan, with particular reference to  
Chronology and Facts, for the use of Schools; elegantly printed in 12mo. bound  
in cloth, 6s.

### READING LESSONS,

In Prose and Verse, selected principally from the Modern Authors of England and  
America, and designed for the use of Public and Private Schools, by the REV.  
JOHN PIERPOINT, Minister of Hollis Street Chapel, Boston, Author of "Airs  
of Palestine," &c. elegantly printed in 12mo. bound in cloth, 4s. 6d.

By far the best Class Book. It has been introduced into the City of London School.

*To be completed in 12 Vols. 8vo. each 12s. cloth lettered,*

---

THE COMPLETE WORKS  
OF  
THOMAS HOBBS  
OF MALMESBURY,

NOW FIRST COLLECTED AND EDITED

BY

SIR WILLIAM MOLESWORTH, BART. M.P.

---

ALTHOUGH the close reasoning of HOBBS, expressed in beautiful language, has created a host of admirers, yet, owing to the excessive rarity of his detached writings, many of which have never been reprinted, no complete set of his works is to be found in any one of our public or private libraries. To remedy this evil, and to present an edition, worthy of the Author, the Editor has collected together the various pieces, and at his own cost has determined to reprint them uniformly, in the best style of modern typography. Four volumes (I. II. of the Latin, and I. and III. of the English works) are already published, and the remainder will follow as speedily as a regard to correctness will allow. As the impression is limited, and the price of each volume (between 500 and 600 pages, with Engravings) is unusually low, the Publisher has every reason to expect that within a short period the whole of the copies will be subscribed for, and therefore would earnestly recommend an early application to prevent disappointment.

An excellent analysis of this author's writings will be found in Mr. Hallam's able Introduction to the Literature of Europe, and the following testimonies in favour of his style will convey some idea of the estimation in which his writings are held.

"Hobbes' language is so lucid and concise that it would almost be as improper to put an algebraical process in different terms as some of his metaphysical paragraphs."—HALLAM.

"A permanent foundation of his fame consists in his admirable style, which seems to be the very perfection of didactic language."—SIR JAMES MACKINTOSH.

"Here let us do justice to that great man's memory, at a time his writings seem to be entirely neglected, who, with all his errors, we must allow to be one of the first men of his age for a bright wit, a deep penetration, and a cultivated understanding."—Bp. WARBURTON.

---

*In foolscap 8vo. boards, 8s.*

THE DEATH OF DEMOSTHENES

And other Original Poems :

WITH THE PROMETHEUS AND AGAMEMNON OF ÆSCHYLUS,

TRANSLATED FROM THE GREEK,

BY GEORGE CROKER FOX, ESQ.

*In crown 8vo. extra boards, price 8s.*

**An Apology**  
FOR  
**Cathedral Service.**

“Apology for the Bible? I didn't know that the Bible wanted any apology.”—K. GEORGE III.

---

*In the press, and shortly will be published, in 3 vols. 8vo.*

DR. FIELD'S  
**BOOK OF THE CHURCH.**

A New Edition, with Notes,

BY

THE REV. JOHN S. BREWER, M.A.

OF QUEEN'S COLLEGE, OXFORD.

---

As Dr. Field's *Book of the Church* has become excessively rare, and, though much in request, is not attainable at any price, the Publisher, at the suggestion of several eminent clergymen, has undertaken a new edition of this very valuable work. In order to render it worthy of attention, and far superior to all preceding ones, the Rev. J. S. Brewer (a Gentleman whose well-known diligence and accuracy guarantee its being executed in the best manner) has kindly undertaken to collate the various editions, to verify all the References, and to supply additional Notes where necessary. It has likewise been determined, on account of the extreme rarity of many of the Authors cited by Dr. Field, to give his quotations at full length at the bottom of each page; and at the end of every chapter a brief list of writers, especially of English Divines, who have treated on the same subject: thus rendering the work a **TEXT BOOK OF THEOLOGY**.

As the rarity of this masterpiece of one of our most eminent Divines has prevented its being so universally known as it deserves, the Publisher may be pardoned for citing a few among the numerous commendations in its favour.

Coleridge, the Poet, in a letter to his son, the Rev. Derwent Coleridge, emphatically writes:—  
“THIS ONE VOLUME, THOROUGHLY UNDERSTOOD AND APPROPRIATED, WILL PLACE YOU IN THE HIGHEST RANK OF DOCTRINAL CHURCH-OF-ENGLAND DIVINES, AND OF NO MEAN RANK AS A TRUE DOCTRINAL CHURCH HISTORIAN.”

King James I. delighted to discourse with Field on Points of Divinity, and when he first preached before him, said: “Is his name Field? This is the FIELD for God to dwell in.” On hearing of his death, the king expressed regret, and added, “I should have done more for that man!”

Fuller, in the same punning age, calls him “That learned Divine, whose memory swelleth like a FIELD which the Lord hath blessed.”

Anthony a Wood tells us he was esteemed “the best disputant in the schools.”

“When he first set about writing his book ‘OF THE CHURCH,’ his old acquaintance, Dr. Kettle, dissuaded him, telling him that when once he was engaged in controversy he would never live quietly, but be continually troubled with answers and replies. To this Field answered, ‘I will so write that they shall have no great mind to answer me; which proved to be nearly the case, as his main arguments were never refuted.’—CHALMERS.

Heylin, in his “*Life of Laud*,” calls him “the reverend right learned Dr. Field, whose excellent works will keep his name alive to succeeding ages.”

PUBLICATIONS  
OF THE  
*English*  
HISTORICAL SOCIETY.

---

In 8vo. elegantly printed,

**BEDÆ VENERABILIS**

HISTORIA ECCLESIASTICA GENTIS ANGLORUM.  
Edidit JOSEPHUS STEVENSON.

---

In 8vo. elegantly printed, 5s. bds.

**GILDÆ SAPIENTIS**

OPUS DE EXCIDIO BRITANNIÆ,  
Ad Fidem Codicum MSS. recensuit JOS. STEVENSON.

---

In 8vo. elegantly printed, 7s. 6d. bds.

**RICARDI DIVISIENSIS**

CHRONICON DE REBUS GESTIS RICARDI I.  
Nunc primum Typis mandatum, curante JOS. STEVENSON.

---

In 8vo. elegantly printed, 5s. bds.

**NENNII HISTORIA BRITONUM**

Ad Fidem Codd. MSS. recensuit JOS. STEVENSON.

---

\* \* All these Volumes are illustrated by English Notes and Marginal References.

---

In 8vo. elegantly printed, price 12s. bds. vol. I of

**A Collection of Anglo-Saxon Charters,**

EDITED BY J. M. KEMBLE, ESQ.

CODEX DIPLOMATICUS ANGLO-SAXONUM.

---

MR. HARDY'S edition of WILLIAM OF MALMESBURY is in the press.

# VALPY'S LATIN CLASSICS.

---

THE  
DELPHIN AND VARIORUM  
EDITION.

---

A COMPLETE SET  
OF THE ABOVE  
IMPORTANT WORK,  
On Large Paper,

IN 185 VOLUMES, ROYAL OCTAVO, EXTRA BOARDS,  
PUBLISHED AT £296. 2.—ONLY £50.

ALSO A COPY, BOUND IN 150 VOLS. ROYAL 8vo. LARGE PAPER, CALF-EXTRA,  
COST £364.—ONLY £100.

### Authors contained in the Series.

APULEIUS.	HORATIUS.	POMP. FESTUS.
AULUS GELLIUS.	JUSTINUS.	PROPERTIUS.
AUREL. VICTOR.	JUVENALIS.	PRUDENTIUS
AUSONIUS.	LIVIUS.	QUINTUS CURTIUS
BOETHIUS.	LUCRETIUS.	SALLUSTIUS.
CÆSAR.	MANILIUS.	STATIUS.
CATULLUS.	MARTIALIS.	SUETONIUS.
CICERO.	OVIDIUS.	TACITUS.
CLAUDIUS.	PANEGYRICI VET.	TERENTIUS.
CORNELIUS NEPOS.	PERSIUS.	TIBULLUS.
DICTYS ET DARES.	PHÆDRUS.	VALERIUS MAX.
EUTROPIUS.	PLAUTUS.	VEL. PATERCULUS.
FLORUS.	PLINIUS (SENIOR).	VIRGILIUS.

This is by far the most complete library edition of the above Authors. The BEST TEXT is given, and the ORDO and INDICES are made to correspond with the text.

ONLY SIX COPIES NOW REMAIN FOR SALE.







